

2He
3

THE
French Scholar's Guide;
OR,
A NEW and COMPENDIOUS
GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH TONGUE.

By WILLIAM ROSS, A. M.
TEACHER of LANGUAGES, in GLASGOW.

K.

GLASGOW:

Printed by DANIEL REID,
For Messrs. MORISON and M'ALLUM,
BOOKSELLERS, in the Salt-Mercat.

M,DCC,LXXII.

[Price 3s. bound.]

2



Entered in Stationers-Hall.

T O
WILLIAM
CHARLES LITTLE,
Of Liberton, &c. Esq;

S I R,

SINCE I have had the honour of being acquainted with you, I have too much respected your merit, not to wish for an occasion of testifying it.—

The present one, surely is too favourable not to embrace.—Your love for improvements in literature induce me to shelter this per-

A 2 formance

[iv]

formance under your protection.— Countenance it then, and accept of this as a testimony of my gratitude for unasked, and perhaps, unmerited favours.

With the utmost respect and esteem, therefore, this book is inscribed to you, by

S I R,

Your most humble servant,

WILLIAM ROSS,

GLASGOW,

15th September, 1772. }

INTRO-

INTRODUCTION.

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE by its beauty is become that, of almost every court in *Europe*.—By it ministers and states-men form leagues, and carry on their negotiations for peace or war, and by it the fond lover addresses the fair.—— It is now so prevalent in our island, that it is looked upon as a very essential and necessary piece of education, without which, it is difficult to get admittance into, what is called, genteel and fashionable company: nay, it is so much in vogue among our modern writers, that it is impossible to read a news-paper, magazine, or even a novel, with pleasure or profit, without a proper knowledge of it.

Many Grammars have been composed for this language, of which, some are good, some bad, others

others indifferent ; but it may be said, even of the best, without depreciating their merit, that they are too replete, and want that plainness and simplicity so necessary for persons unaccustomed to study, especially the ladies, who are at once disheartened by the novelty of the terms, and intimidated by the vast variety of the subjects they treat of.—In my opinion, to this may be ascribed their backwardness and little inclination to learn the language.

Our *British* youths have long thought the study of it difficult, and not to be attained but after a *Herculean* labour, great fatigue and immense expences ; but this ill-grounded notion, seems to have proceeded, from the uncouth and disadvantageous manner, in which some ignorant and unskilful masters have communicated their instructions ; (who, as the *R. P. L. Chiflet* says, only open schools to vend their ignorance, and exchange their hollow jargon, for the solid money of their employers ;) and for want of having things cleared up to them as they went along.—Every one is sensible, that in order to attain a perfect knowledge in any art or science, we must have things unknown taught us, by things which are known.

I need

INTRODUCTION. vii

I need not then, I hope, make any apology for this publication; as it is but too evident, how much a performance of this kind, if well executed, is wanted; particularly, for such as have it not in their power to put themselves under the direction of able masters, and which might, in some measure, remove these complaints.

In this view I have endeavoured to explain the PRINCIPLES of GRAMMAR in such a plain and easy way, as will render it pleasant and delightful to the learner, and as will rather incite, than discourage youths to acquire it. And herein I have had regard to the following things;

I. To give the examples under the rules of pronounciation, as they would be, if they were *English*.

II. To give, *1st*, general, and then particular observations on the accents.—Little attended to by many Grammarians, and unknown to others.

III. To give rules for the genders of nouns, with their exceptions, and a list of words which are masculine or feminine, according to their different significations:—Of real advantage to beginners.

IV. In

IV. In verbs, to give the formation immediately before the tense.

V. To give the simple tenses of irregular and defective verbs in a single table, according to their conjugation.—By which they appear at first sight.

VI. To give the different meanings and uses of the conjunction *Que*; which will render it easy, and more plain.

VII. To give as an ADDENDA, a short, but comprehensive account of the moods, tenses, participles and gerunds of verbs, with their uses and government; which, though considerable and difficult, are fully explained.

VIII. To give a regular SYNTAX, with explanatory remarks as we proceed; particularly on the articles, position of adjectives, &c. and lastly on the particles *de*, *à* and *pour*, before the infinitives of verbs.

On this plan I have proceeded, in which I have endeavoured to give the principles and rules the order, that appeared to me, the most simple, and natural.—The aim of every writer, ought certainly to be, to instruct as well as to please.—How far I have succeeded in either, I leave the impartial reader to judge.

THE

THE
French Scholar's GUIDE;

O R,

A NEW and CORRECT

GRAMMAR

OF THE

FRENCH TONGUE.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

Containing some reflexions on grammar in general, on words, syllables, letters, vowels, diphthongs, consonants, and the parts of speech.

ARTICLE I.

Of GRAMMAR in general, of Words and Syllables, &c.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

To speak is to express our thoughts by the mean of the voice.

Thought is what passes in our mind; or it is the actions and operations of the soul.

Thoughts are chiefly of two kinds; viz. *Ideas* and *judgements*.

B

Idea

Of GRAMMAR in general.

Idea is what passes in our mind, when it simply represents objects, or things, without forming any judgement of them; as when we represent to ourself the *earth, the sun, a tree, a round, a square, &c.*

Jugement represents the actions of our mind, when it brings together several ideas, in order to ascertain that the one agrees, or does not agree with the other; for example, when I have in my mind the idea of the earth, and that of a round, I affirm that the one agrees with the other, by saying the earth is round; when I have the idea of God, and of unjust, I affirm that the one does not agree with the other, by saying God is not unjust. So the earth is round, and God is not unjust, are two jugements.

Thought is expressed by the help of the voice, in articulate sounds, which are called words.

Articulate sounds are formed and varied by the different movements of the tongue and lips.

Words may be considered either simply as sounds, or signs which serve to make our thoughts known, that is, to declare what passes in our mind.

Words considered as sounds, are composed of syllables, and a syllable is a sound that makes itself to be heard in an instant; and which either cannot, or ought not to be divided.

Letters are used to represent to the sight the sounds of words or syllables. So written syllables are made up of letters, as words are of syllables.

Letters are characters invented to express in writing the different sounds and articulations of the voice. The *French* have twenty-four of these contained in a table called ALPHABET, from the two first *Greek* letters *Alpha* and *Beta*, viz. A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Z. called Capitals.

Or,

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, which are called Common.

They

They are generally thus pronounced.

Aw, bé, èè, dé, é, or è, è fem. (*vide* next article) èf, jé, awsh, ee, ij, kaw, èl, èm, èn, ô, pé, icû, èr, ès té, û, or as in the *Scots* word brû, vé, ix, zé, or zè.

Note, That K is only used in such words as come from the *German*, and some other languages; and when y is used in *French*, it generally represents two iis, or it sounds like simple i.

Letters are two of two kinds, *viz.* vowels and consonants.

ARTICLE II.

Of VOWELS.

VOWELS are used to express a simple sound, which is formed by a single opening of the mouth, and is varied by the different dispositions of the passage of the voice.

The vowels are five in number; *viz.* A, E, I, O, U, which have a lasting and permanent sound; that is, a sound that may be continued, without making any new movement of the mouth, while we press forward the breath from the lungs.

You must, however, except the *e* mute, the sound of which cannot be continued, without changing it into that of *eu*.

The vowels are of three kinds; *viz.* simple, compound, and nasal.

I. Of Simple VOWELS.

The simple vowels are expressed in a single letter; as, A, E, I, O, U, and three others, which are to be found in the letter *e*, as it may be pronounced three different

ways: Which is the reason why it is distinguished in three different manners; viz. *e* mute, *é* shut, or masculine, and *è* open.

The *e* mute hath only a dull and obscure sound, and must be pronounced as at the end of the *English* words give, live, &c. It is also called *e* feminine.

The *é* shut, or masculine hath, or ought always to have the acute accent over it, thus *é*, and is pronounced with a permanent and firm sound; as in *café*, coffee; *vérité*, truth; *bonté*, goodness; *témérité*, rashness.

The *è* open requires a more or less opening of the mouth, in proportion as it is to be pronounced more or less open. Thus it is less open in *misère*, misery; *musette*, a bag-pipe; *fidèle*, faithful; &c. than in *guerre*, war; *ferme*, firm; *conquête*, conquest; *suprême*, supreme; *succès*, success.

II. Of Compound Vowels.

There are two, and sometimes three of the simple vowels joined together and made to express a simple and permanent sound, and consequently ought only to be regarded as a single vowel, and except two, there is none of them that does not express a sound like one, or another of the five simple vowels.

Those which express a sound like that of some one of the simple vowels, are

1. EA, Which in some words has the sound of *a*; as, *Il mangea*, he did eat; *nous songeâmes*, we did think; *nous mangeâmes*, we did eat; &c. pronounce as if they were written *i mang-ja*, *noo song-jâme*, *noo mang-jâme*.

2. AI, AY, Which have the sound of *é* masculine in these words, *Pais*, country; *païsan*, a peasant, or country man; *païer*, to pay; *essaïer*, to try; which however are better written *pays*, *paysan*, *payer*, *essayer*. Pronounce *péi*, *péi-zang*, *péi-é*, *esse-ïé*.

3. AI,

3. AI, Which hath the sound of mute *e* in the words *faisant*, doing; *je faisois*, I did; which may be written *fesant*, *je fesois*. Pron. *fezang*, *je fezè*.

4. AI, Which hath the sound of masculine *é* in the words *j'ai*, I have; *je chantai*, I sang; *je lirai*, I will read; and in general in all preterites of the first conjugation, and in the future indicative of all verbs. Pron. *j'é*, *je shang-té*, *je liré*.

5. AI, EI, and OI, Which have the sound of the open *è*, in the words, *Maison*, house; *seigneur*, lord; *faible*, weak; *connoître*, to know; *croître*, to increase; *croire*, to believe; *droit*, (rectus) straight, right; and their compounds. OI sounds *è* in all imperfect tenses of verbs; as, *je parlois*, I spoke; *je dirois*, I would say; &c. and in many names of nations; as, *Anglois*, English; *Ecossois*, Scots; *François*, French; &c. Pron. *Mèzong*, *seigneur*, *seble*, *connetre*, *erètre*, *erère*, *drè*, *je parle*, *je dirè*, *Anglè*, *Ecosse*, *Frangse*.

6. UI, Which has the sound of *i* in the words *vuide*, empty, *vuider*, to empty; *qui*, who. Pron. *vide*, *vidé*, *ki*.

7. AU,EAU,EO, Which have the sound of *ø* in the words *auteur*, author; *tableau*, picture; *geolier*, jaylor; &c. Pron. *øteur*, *tablø*, *joliø*.

8. EU, Which hath the sound of *u* in the words *j'ai eu*, I have had; *piqueure*, quilting; &c. *gageure*, wager; &c. Pron. *j'é-u*, *pi-ku-ure*, *ga-jure*.

9. OE, Which hath the sound of *é* mas. in *œcuménique*, œcumenical; *œconome*, steward, œconomist. Pron. *œcuménique*, *œconome*.

The two compound vowels which express particular sounds, and different from those of the five simple; are

1. EU, or OEU, of which the sound differs from that of the mute *e* in this, that it is more clear, and may be continued, as in the words *feu*, fire; *neveu*, nephew; *œuvre*, work; *noeud*, knot; *vœu*, vow; *cœur*, heart; &c. Pron. *flû*, *nevû*, *lûvre*, *nû*, *vû*, *kûr*.

2. OU, Which is pronounced like the English-oo, as in *fou*, fool; *genou*, knee; *couroucé*, provoked; &c. Pron. *foo*, *je-noo*, *coo-roocé*.

3. AOU, Which is also pronounced like oo; as in *aout*, August. Pron. oo.

III. Of Nasal Vowels.

The nasal vowels, are nothing but the simple, or compound vowels joined to the letter *n*, or *m*, which express a simple and permanent sound in a particular manner. They are called nasal, because they are pronounced in a soft ringing manner through the nose: They are

1. AN, EAN, and AM, Which are pronounced as if they were written *ang* short; as, *antiquité*, antiquity; *plan*, plan; *ambigu*, ambiguous; *antichambre*, outer-room; *Jean*, John; *mangeant*, eating; &c. Pron. *ang-tikité*, *plang*, *angbigu*, *angtisbangbre*, *jang*, *mang-jang*.

2. AEN, Which is pronounced like *ang* long, only in the word *Caen*, the name of a town. Pron. *kang*.

3. AON, Which is also pronounced like *ang* long; as, *faon*, a fawn; *Laon*, the name of a town; *paon*, a peacock. Pron. *fâng*, *Lâng*, *pâng*: but it is pronounced like *ong* short, in *taon*, a fly; Pron. *tong*.

4. EN, and EM, Which are almost always pronounced like *ang*; as, *engager*, to engage; *attentif*, attentive; *empire*, empire; *ressembler*, to resemble; *entendement*, understanding; &c. Pron. *ang-ga-jé*, *atang-tif*, *ang-pire*, *ressangblé*, *ang-tang-démang*.

5. EN, Which hath sometimes a different pronunciation, and seems rather to participate of the sound of the open *è*, than of the *a*, as at the beginning of the word *ennemi*, enemy; Pron. *è-ne-mi*; and at the end of the words *chien*, dog; *lien*, tie; *mien*, mine; *tien*, thine; &c. Pron. *sbi-èng*, *li-èng*, *mi-èng*, *ti-èng*.

6. IN, Which is pronounced some whatlike the above, or like *èing* soft; as, *Vin*, wine; *jardin*, garden; *inté-rét*,

Part I. Chap. I. Art. II.

7

rét, interest; &c. Pron. *vèing*, *jardèing*, *èing-té-rè*, with more of the sound of the *i* than of the *è*.

7. IM, AIN, EIN, AIM, Which are pronounced in the same manner as *IN*; as you may perceive in *impie*, impious; *main*, hand; *dessein*, design; *faim*, hunger; &c. Pron. *èing-pie*, *mèing*, *desseing*, *feing*.

8. ON, EON, OM. Which have the sound of *ong* short; as, *bon*, good; *fontaine*, fountain; *pigeon*, pigeon; *ombrage*, shade; &c. Pron. *bong*, *fongtaine*, *pi-jon*, *ong-brage*.

9. UN, EUN, and UM, Which take the sound of *ung*; as, *commun*, common; *à jeun*, fasting; *humble*, humble; *parfum*, perfume; &c. Pron. *commung*, *à jung*, *ungble*, *parfung*.

Note, If any simple, or compound vowel comes immediately after the letter *n*, or *m*, the preceding vowel is not nasal. Thus there are no nasal vowels in the following words, *amitié*, friendship; *animé*, animated; *image*, image; *vaine*, vain; *onéreux*, burdensome; *humilité*, humility; &c.

R E M A R K S

On Long and Short VOWELS.

THE vowels, whether simple, compound, or nasal, are sometimes long and sometimes short, according to the words wherein they are used, and sometimes according to the rank the word has in a discourse.

A is long in the last syllable of *dégât*, spoil, and it is short in the last syllable of *avocat*, advocate.

O is short in *votre*, if you say *votre livre*, your book; but is long, if you say *donnez-moi le vôtre*, give me yours.

A and E are long in *brave*, brave; &c. and *honnête*, virtuous, &c. when you say *un homme brave*; *un homme honnête*; but they become short when these words

are transposed, and when you say, *un brave homme, un honnête homme.*

The long vowels are commonly to be found only in the last, or penult syllables, or if they are found in the syllable that precedes the penult, as in *entêtement*, infatuation, you must pass so softly over the two last, that you take little more time to pronounce them, than if they were but one. The vowels of the preceding syllables are always short.

Long or short vowels always render the syllables in which they are, long or short. Thus the last syllable in *intérêt*, interest, is long, and the penult in *pentecôte*, Whitsunday; because the vowels are long in both these syllables. The only rule to be followed in this is custom, and the example of those who speak correctly. However, there may be given as general and unexceptionable rules.

I. That all the last syllables of plural words are long, when they have not in them an *e* mute, and when they end in S, X, or Z; as in *les cabinets*, closets; *les vérités*, truths; *les esprits*, spirits; *les dévots*, religious men; *les vertus*, virtues; *les chevaux*, horses; *les jeux*, games; *nous aimons*, we love; *vous aimez*, you love, &c.

II. That the penult syllables of words are always long, when they end with a vowel, followed immediately by an *e* mute; in *armée*, army; *envie*, envy; *proie*, prey; *boue*, mire; *statue*, statue, &c.

The grave accent (`) is put over some words, and the circumflex (^) over others to mark a long vowel.

The French language admits of sixteen simple sounds expressed by the vowels; they are *a* short and *â* long, which have a little difference in the pronunciation, *e* mute, *é* masculine, *è* open, *i*, *o* short and *ô* long, *u*, *eu*, *ou*, *an*, *en* with nearly the sound of *è*, *in*, *on*, and *un*.

ARTICLE III.

Of DIPHTHONGS.

A *Diphthong* is the combination of two or three vowels in the same syllable, and expresses a double sound

As the diphthongs are formed by the junction, either of one simple vowel with another, or of a simple vowel with a compound, or of a simple vowel with a nasal; they may, like the vowels be distinguished into three kinds, *viz.* *simple, compound, and nasal.*

I. Of Simple DIPHTHONGS.

The simple diphthongs are formed by the junction of a simple vowel with another, They are seven in number, *viz.*

1. **IA**; as, *diable*, devil; *fiacre*, a hackney-coach; *diacre*, a deacon; *liard*, a French farthing; *fiancer*, to betroth, &c. Pron. *dia-ble*, *fia-cre*, *dia-cre*, *liar*, *fian-se*.

2. **IE**; as, *piece*, a piece; *lumiere*, light; *amitié*, friendship; *fief*, a fief, or fee; *miel*, honey, &c. Pron. *Piè-se*, *lu-mière*, *ami-tié*, *fièf*, *mièl*.

3. **IO**; as *fiote*, phial; *pioche*, pick-ax; *nous parlions*, we spoke; *nous avions*, we had, &c. Pron. *fiote*, *pio-che*, *noo par-liong*, *noo-za-viong*.

4. **OE**; as, *boête*, a box; *coëffe*, a hood, or coif; *moelle*, marrow; *poêle*, a stove, &c. Pron. *boè-te*, *coèf-fe*, *moè-le*, *poè-le*.

5. **OI**; With the sound of *o* and *è* open; as, *boire*, to drink; *dévoiler*, to unvail; *emploi*, employment; *droit*, (jus)

(jus) right, or property; *loi*, law; *moi*, I; and in general it hath this sound, 1. In monosyllables. 2. In nouns and verbs ending in *oir* and *oire*. 3. In the present indicative of verbs of the third conjugation. 4. In most names of nations and countries; as *Gaulois*, *Genois*, *Liégois*, *Hongrois*, *Danois*, *Suédois*, *Chinois*, *Hambourquois*, *Brandebourgeois*, *Bavarois*, *Champinois*, *l'Artois*, *le Vermandois*, *le Blésois*, *l'Angoumois*, *l'Auxerrois*, *le Condommois*, and a great many others. 5. Generally before *g* and *n*; but it is not quite so open before *n*, as before *g*.

6. UE; as, *écuelle*, porringer; *attribué*, attributed; *situé*, situated, &c.

7. UI; as, *nuisible*, hurtful; *conduite*, conduct; *celui*, he; *aujourd'hui*, to day, &c.

II. Of Compound DIPHTHONGS.

The compound diphthongs are formed by the junction of a simple vowel with a compound. They are six in number, viz.

1. IAI; as, *biaiser*, to use evasions; *biais*, course, way, manner; *niais*, simple, &c. Pron *biai-sé*, *biè*, *niè*, &c.

2. IAU; as, *miau*, mewling; *miauler*, to mew; *matériaux*, materials; *cordiaux*, cordials, &c. Pron. *miô*, *miô-lé*, *ma-té-riô*, &c.

3. IEU; as, *Dieu*, God; *lieu*, place; *lieutenant*, lieutenant; *mieux*, better; *milieu*, middle, &c.

4. IOU; as, *chiourme*, the slaves of a galley.

5. OUE; as, *souetter*, to whip; *couette*, a feather-bed; *ouest*, west; *joué*, played, &c.

6. OUI; as, *enfoui*, fled; *Louis*, Lewis; *oui*, yes, or heard, &c.

Note, In the first four, the simple vowel is before the compound, and in the two others it is after it.

The diphthong of the word *ouais*, lack-a-day, is formed of two compound vowels *ou* and *ai*. Pron. *oo-è*.

III. Of

III. Of Nasal DIPHTHONGS.

The nasal diphthongs are formed by the junction of a simple vowel with a nasal. They are four in number, viz.

1. IAN; as, *viande*, flesh-meat; *étudiant*, student; *fortifiant*, strengthening, &c. Pron. *viangde*, *étudiang*, *fortifiang*, &c.

IEN, With the sound of *ang*; as, *patient*, patient; *expédient*, expedient; *inconvenient*, inconvenient, &c. Pron. *paciang*, *expédiang*, *èngcong-véniang*.

2. IEN, With a sound somewhat like that of the *è* open; as, *bien*, good, well; *lien*, string, tie; *mien*, mine; *rien*, nothing; *tien*, thine; *sien*, his; *soutient*, a stay; *il convient*, he agrees, &c. Pron. *bièng*, *lièng*, *mièng*, *rièng*, *tièng*, *sièng*, *soùtièng*, *il cong-vièng*.

3. ION; as, *nous aimions*, we loved; *nous aimerions*, we should love; *nous aimassions*, we might love, &c. Pron. *noo-zémiong*, *noo-zèmeriong*, *noo-zèmassiong*.

4. OIN; as, *loin*, far; *bésoin*, need; *moins*, less; *moindre*, less, meaner, &c. Pron. *loèng*, *bésoèng*, *moèng*, *moèngdre*.

R E M A R K S.

1. **T**HOUGH there are no other Diphthongs than those of which we have just now spoken, yet it must be observed that *N* in the most part of the words where it supplies the place of two *ii*'s makes part of a diphthong with the ensuing vowel, as you may see in the following words, *voyage*, journey; *envoyé*, sent; *royaume*, kingdom; *ennuyeux*, tiresome; *voyant*, seeing; *moyen*, mean; *employons*, let us use, &c. Which we pronounce, *voi-iage*, *ang-voi-ié*, *roi-ième*, *anui-iù*, *voi-iang*, *mòi-ièng*, *angploi-ièng*.

2. It

2. It is not enough that a simple vowel precedes or follows another, in order to form a diphthong; it is also requisite, that the simple vowel be pronounced in the same syllable, and in the same instant, with the one that precedes, or follows it. So in *cria, priant, sanglier, client, plions, géographie, téologie, &c.* *ia, ian, ie, ien, ion, eo*, are not diphthongs; because they must be pronounced in two times, and consequently in different syllables: *cri-a, pri-ang, sang-gli-é, &c.*

3. Some grammarians call the compound diphthongs, triphthongs; but that appellation is not just, as it is not enough that a syllable be composed of three vowels, in order to call it a triphthong; it must also express three sounds, which is not to be found in the *French* language.

4. In familiar discourse, almost all the combinations of vowels which express a double sound, form only one syllable; but the most part of these vowels which make only one syllable in familiar conversation must of necessity form two in poetry and in a set, or declamatory discourse, and so cease to be regarded as diphthongs.

As it is difficult to ascertain by general rules, what are the combinations of vowels expressing a double sound that ought to be pronounced in one or two syllables, in poetry, &c. we shall only observe;

1. That almost all the vowels which we have called diphthongs, cease to be so, and are pronounced in two syllables, when they come after an *r* or an *l* preceded by another consonant.

2. *Oi*, is always pronounced in one syllable, whether in ordinary conversation, or in poetry, &c.

3. *Ion*, is not pronounced in one syllable in poetry, or a declamatory discourse, but when it forms the termination of the first persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, of the conditional present, or of the imperfect of the subjunctive of verbs, as in *nous ai-mions*, we loved; *nous ai-merions*, we should love; *nous aimas-sions*, we might love, &c. unless it comes after *r* preceded by another consonant; in which case you must pronounce

pronounce *nous met-tri-ons*, we should put *nous ren-dri-ons*, we should restore, &c. every where else *ion* forms two syllables; as, *vi-fi-on*, vision; *espi-on*, spy; *li-on*, lion, &c.

4. *Oin*, is always in one syllable; as, *join-ture*, joint; *té-moin*, witness, &c.

5. The other combinations of vowels, which we have called simple, compound or nasal diphthongs are pronounced in poetry, &c. sometimes in one syllable, and sometimes in two. Thus *ie*, *ui*, *ieu*, *ian*, *ien*, only from one syllable, *bie-re*, *ce-lui*, *Dieu*, *vian-de*, *biën-fait*, and they form two in, *ni-er*, *ru-ine*, *o-di-eux*, *ri-ant*, *li-en*, &c.

ARTICLE IV.

Of CONSONANTS.

THE *consonants* are nineteen in number, viz. B, C, D, F, G, H, J, K, L, M, N, P, Q, R, S, T, V, X, Z, and are so called, because they cannot be pronounced without the help of a vowel, before or after them.

The sound of the consonants differs from that of the vowels in this; viz.

The sound of the vowels is formed by the simple opening of the mouth, and by the impulse of the voice; whereas the sound of the consonants is produced by certain movements of the tongue, teeth, or lips, and cannot be heard without the sound of a vowel along with it.

This letter is pronounced nearly like *p* before *f* or *t*, as in *observer*, to observe; *obscurcir*, to obscure; *obtus*,

tus, blunt; *obtenir*, to obtain, &c. Pron. almost as if they were written *opservé*, *opscursi*, *optus*, &c.

It retains its natural sound at the end of all proper names taken from the Hebrew or Greek languages; as, *Acab*, *Moab*, *Oreb*, &c.

It is always mute in *plomb*, lead; and *rumb*, or *romb de vent*, a point of wind. Pron. *plong*, *rung*, or *rông de vang*: but it is sounded in *radoub*, resiting.

C.

C before *a*, *o*, *u*, sounds hard like *k*; as *cabinet*, closet; *colere*, wrath; *curé*, a curat, &c. Pron. *kabinè*, *kolère*, *kuré*; but when *c* is to be sounded soft like *s* before these letters, it has a cedilla under it, thus *ç*, as in *façade*, front; *conçu*, conceived; *garçon*, a batchelor, or boy, &c. Pron. *fasade*, *congfu*, *garsong*.

It sounds *s* before *e* and *i*; as, *célibat*, celibacy; *citoyen*, a citizan, &c. Pron. *sélibâ*, *sitoy-ièng*, &c.

It sounds *g*, in *Claude*, *Glaud*; *cicogne*, a stork; *second*, second; *secondement*, secondly; *seconder*, to second, or assist; *secret*, secret; *secrétaire*, secretary; *secrétariat*, secretaryship; *secrètement*, privately; *nécromance*, or *nécromancie*, necromancy. Pron. *Glâde*, *cigogne*, *ségong*, *segongdemang*, *segongde*, *sègrè*, *sègrétaire*, *sègrétaria*, *segretémang*, *negromanse*, *negromangsie*. It is better to write and pronounce *cangrens*, than *gangrene*, a gangrene.

Cet, this or that, *mas.* is pronounced *st*; and *cette*, this, or that, *fem.* like *ste*: so, though you write *cet oiseau*, this bird; *cet honneur*, this honour; *cette femme*, this woman, &c. you must pronounce *stoèst*, *stonst*, *stefemme*.

C is pronounced in *sanctuaire*, sanctuary; *sanctifier*, to sanctify; and *octroier*, to grant; but it is mute in *contract*, contract. Pronounce *congtrâ*.

When *c* or *g* comes after a vowel in the same syllable they retain their natural and hard sound, as in *défectueux*, deficient; *dictet*, to dictate; *augmenter*, to augment;

augment, &c. Pron. *défek-tu-té, dik-té, og-mang-té.*

C is sounded hard like *k* at the end of the following words, whether before a vowel or consonant; as *arc*, a bow; *avec*, with; *bouc*, a he-goat; *duc*, a duke; *fic*, a horse disease; *parc*, a park; *pic*, a pick-ax; *roc*, a rock; *sac*, a bag, or sack; *suc*, juice. Pron. *ark, avek, book, duk, fik, park, pik, rok, sak, suk*: but it is always mute in *banc*, a bench; *jonc*, a rush; *tronc*, stump; *marc*, a mark. In *broc*, large tankard; *cotignac*, quiddany; *tabac*, tobacco; it sounds also like *k* before a vowel, and in *blanc*, white; *franc*, free or quit; though it be mute before a consonant, or at the end of a word; as, *du blanc au noir*, from white to black; *franc & quitte*, free and quit, &c. Pron. *du blank ô noir, frangk ê kitte.*

When *donc*, then, is used in asking a question, you must not pronounce the *c*; as, *est-il donc vrai?* is it then true? &c. Pron. *è-ti dong-vrè*: but when it begins a period, or when it serves to draw a consequence in form, you must pronounce it, as, *donc, vous le voulez*; then you will have it, *tout homme est un animal*; *donc, Pierre qui est homme, est un animal*, every man is an animal; then, or therefore *Peter* who is man, is an animal, &c. Pron. *too-tôme è-tun-nanimal; dongk Pierre ki è-tôme è-tun-nanimal.*

Ch is generally pronounced like *sb* before a vowel; as, *charité*, charity; *cheval*, a horse; *chimere*, chimera; *chose*, thing; *déchu*, wasted, &c. Pron. *scharité, sbeval, sbimere, &c.* But when *ch* is followed by a consonant it sounds hard like *k*, as in *Chrétien*, Christian; *Christianisme*, Christianity; *chronique*, chronical, &c. Pron. *Kretièng, Kristianisme, kronique.*

Ch has the sound of *k* in words derived from the Hebrew and Greek languages; as, *Cham*, *Chaldée*, *Chus*, *Achaïe*, *Archange*, *Archétype*, *Archonte*, *Archiépiscopal*, *alchimie*, *caractère*, *charybde*, *les charites*, *chersonese*, *chiragre*, *chélidoine*, *chiromance*, *schirre*, *catéchumene*,
écho,

écho, chœur, chorographie, chaës, chirographaire, eucharistie, mécanique, and some other proper names.

D.

D is mute at the end of the following words whether before a vowel, or consonant; *bléd*, corn; *chaud*, heat; *crud*, raw; *muid*, hogthead, *nud*, naked; *nid*, nest; *piéd*, foot; *il s'assied*, he sits down; *il mord*, he bites; *rond*, round; *bord*, edge; *sourd*, deaf; *sud*, south. Pron. *blé*, *chô*, *cru*, *mui*, &c.

It is mute before a consonant in *froid*, cold; *grand*, great; *laid*, ill-looking; *profond*, deep; *quand*, when; as, *froid predicateur*, a cold preacher; *grand plaisir*, great pleasure; *laid visage*, an ill-favoured face, &c. Pron. *frè prèdicateur*, *grang plèsi*, *lè vi zage*, &c. But before a vowel, or at the end of a period it sounds like *t*; as *froid orateur*, cold orator; *grand homme*, great man; *laid enfant*, ill-looking child; *profond astronome*, a profound, or great astronomer, &c. Pron. *frè-torateur*, *grang-tôme*, *lè-tang-fang*, *profong-tastronome*.

F.

F is generally pronounced at the end of words; as, *chef*, head, chief; *cerf*, stag; *fief*, fief or fee; *oisif*, idle; *naïf*, genuine; *nerf*, a sinew; *pensif*, pensive; *relief*, remedy of appeal; *soif*, thirst; *tardif*, slow, tardy; *veuf*, widower; *vis*, alive; and near a hundred more; except only *baillif*, a bailiff; *clef*, key; *éteuf*, a tennis ball; *couvrechef*, a kerchief; wherein *f* is never pronounced. Pron. *bèli*, *clé*, *coovreché*; and the following three in the plural, *boeufs*, oxen; *oeufs*, eggs; *neufs*, new; as, *les boeufs* & *les vaches*, the oxen and the cows; *les oeufs* & *les poules*, the eggs and the hens; *les habits neufs* & *les vieux*, the new cloaths and the old. Pron. *lé blü-zè* *lé vafbe*, *lè-zü-zè* *lé poole*, *lè-zabi nû-zè* *lé vîeu*; but you must pronounce *f* in the singular.

F takes the sound of *v* in *neuf*, nine; when followed by a vowel or *h* mute; as, *neuf heures*, nine o'clock, &c.

&c. Pron. *nû-vûre*; But it is mute before a consonant.

G.

G retains its natural and hard sound before *a, o, u*; as, *galant*, gallant; *gosier*, throat; *aigu*, sharp, &c. And it takes the sound of *j* before *e* and *i*; as, *génie*, genius; *gibier*, game. Pron. *jénie*, *jibié*.

When *g* before *a, o, u*, is to be pronounced soft, as before *e* and *i*, there is commonly an *e* put between the *g* and the *a, o, u*; as in *il mangea*, he eat; *geolier*, jaylor; *gageure*, wager, &c. Pron. *mang-ja*, *jo-lié*, *ga-jûre*.

To give *g* before *e* and *i* the hard sound that it has before *a, o, u*, there is an *u* put after the *g*; as in *guérir*, to cure; *guêpe*, a wasp; *guide*, guide; *guimpe*, a stomacher, &c. but then the *u* is mute. Pron. *ghéri*, *ghêpe*, *ghide*, *ghimpe*. Except *Guise*, the name of a town; *éguille*, needle; *éguillette*, a point; *éguillon*, a goad, a sting; *éguiser*, to whet, or sharpen, and their derivatives; wherein you must pronounce the *u*. The *u* must also be sounded when it is in a separate syllable from *e* or *i*; as in *ambigue*, ambiguous; *ambiguité*, ambiguity; *cigue*, hemlock. Pron. *ang-bi-gu-e*, *ang-bi-gu-i-té*, *ci-gu-e*.

When *g* comes before *n* in the middle of a word, it serves to give *n* a liquid sound, as in *bagnio*; as, *digne*, worthy; *ignorance*, ignorance; *insigne*, remarkable; *enseigne*, ensign, &c. Pron. *di-gne*, *i-gno-rance*, &c. but it is mute in *signe*, sign; *signifier*, to signify; with their derivatives, and in *magnifique*, magnificent; but it is pronounced in *magnificence*, magnificence; and *magnifier*, to magnify.

When *gg* come together in the middle of a word, they must be both sounded, but in separate syllables; as, *suggerer*, to suggest; *suggestion*, suggestion, &c. Pron. *sug-je-ré*, *sug-je-stiong*, &c.

Final *g* is always mute, except in *bourg*, a borough; and *joug*, yoke; where it sounds like *k* before a vowel;

Pron. *boork*, *jook*; but it is mute whether before a vowel, or consonant, in *Faux-bourg*, suburb. Pron. *Fô-boor*.

G Sounds also like *k* in *long*, long; *rang*, rank; *sang*, blood; before words beginning with a vowel; as, *un long espace*, a long space; *un rang illustre*, an illustrious rank; *un sang échauffé*, a heated blood; *il sue sang & eau*, he sweats blood and water, &c. Pron. *ung long kespace*, *ung rang-kilustre*, *ung sang-késboffé*, *i sue sang-kè é*.

Note, Although *g* be mute in *vingt*, twenty; *doigt*, finger; *legs*, legacy; it must be retained in writing, as otherwise these words might be confounded with the verbs *il vint*, he came; *il doit*, he owes; and with the article *les*, the. Pron. *vèing*, *doè*, *lè*.

H.

The French *h* is of two kinds. The first is only used in some words borrowed from the *Latin* and *Greek*, and is called *mute*, as it adds nothing to the pronunciation of the following vowel; as, *l'homme*, man; *l'honneur*, honour, &c. Pron. *l'ôme*, *l'onûr*.

The second is used, in some words, to mark that the following vowel is aspirated, that is to say, is pronounced through the throat with force; as, *Le héros*, the heroe; *la hauteur*, height; *la haine*, hatred, &c. and in this case, it may be looked upon as a real consonant, as it expresses the aspirated articulation of the following vowel.

It may be laid down as a general rule, that such words as come from the *Latin* have *h* mute; as, *l'heure*, the hour; *l'hiéble*, wall-wort; *l'huile*, the oil; *l'huitre*, the oister, &c. Except in a few, such as, *hannir*, *harpie*, harpy; *haleter*, to pant, &c. but on the contrary, in those which do not come from the *Latin*, such as *la honte*, shame; *la harangue*, the oration, &c. it is pronounced with aspiration.

*An Alphabetical LIST of the WORDS
most in Use, wherein h marks the Aspiration.*

Ha! ah! or ha!
habler, to bable.
hableur, m. } a babler.
hableuse, f. }
hablerie, empty sounds.
hache, an ax.
hacher, to chop, or mince.
hachette, a mason's trowel.
hachis, minced meat.
hachoir, a chopping board.
hachure, hatching.
hagard, fierce, wild.
haie, a hedge.
haillon, a rag, tatter.
Hainaut, name of a province.
baine, hatred.
haïr, to hate.
haire, hair-cloth.
haïssable, hateful.
halage, towage.
halebran, young wild duck.
halebreda, a lubberly fellow.
hâle, a drying wind.
hâler, to make tawny.
ballebardê, a halberd.
hale-bouline, a raw sea-man.
halecret, a corset.
halener, to smell one's breath.
haleter, to pant.
balle, a hall.

ballier, a thicket.
halte, halt
hameau, a hamlet.
hampe, shaft of a halberd.
hanap, a drinking cup.
hanche, the hanch, hip.
hangar, a cart-house.
hanneton, a may-bug.
hanter, to haunt.
hantise, keeping company.
haper, to snap, to catch.
happe-chair, a bum-bailiff.
happe-lopin, a catch-bit.
happe-lourde, an empty fop.
haquenée, a pacing-horse.
haquet, a dray.
haranguer, to preach.
harangueur, speech-maker,
haras, a stud of horses.
harasser, to tease.
harceler, to molest, to vex.
hard, or } a rope, halter.
hart, }
hardes, plur. clothes.
hardi, bold, daring.
hareng, a herring.
hargneux, peevish.
haricot, mutton sod with turnips, &c. a ragout.
haridelle, a jaded horse.
harlequin, a merry-Andrew.

barlou, the cry to set dogs
after the wolf.

harnacher, to harness.

barnois, harness.

haro, a hue and cry.

harpe, a harp.

harpon, a cramp-iron.

hasard, hazard, peril.

hase, a doe-hare.

hâte, haste, speed.

haubants, the shrouds of a
ship.

haubert, a coat of mail.

hausse-col, a neck-piece.

hausser, to raise up.

haut, high.

haut-bois, a haut-bois.

haute-contre, the counter-
tenor in music.

hâve, pale, wan.

havre, a haven.

havre-sac, a knap-sack.

hé! oh! hoe!

hem! hem!

Henri, Henry.

hennir, to neigh.

héraut, herald.

herce, a port-cullis.

here, a hair-shirt.

bergne, rupture of the belly.

hériffer, to bristle up.

hérisson, a hedge-hog.

hernie, rupture, &c.

héron, a heron.

héros, a hero.

herse, a harrow.

hêtre, the beech-tree.

heurter, to hit against.

hibou, an owl.

hideux, hideous.

hie, a pavior's beetle.

hierarchie, hierarchy.

ho! oh!

hoche, a notch.

hocher, to shake.

hochet, a child's rattle.

hola, hoe there.

Hollande, Holland.

homard, a great lobster.

hongre, a gelding.

Hongrie, Hungary.

honte, shame.

hoquet, hiccough.

hoqueton, a kind of coat.

hormis, except, but.

hors, out.

hotte, a dosser.

houblon, hops.

houe, a hoe, a spade.

houlette, a sheep-hook.

houpe, a tuft.

houspiller, to worry.

Houffard, or } a huzard.

houffart,

houffe, houzing.

houffer, to sweep, &c.

houffine, a switch.

houx, holy-oak.

hoyau, a mattock.

buche, a kneading-trough.

hue, or *haye*, a gee-ho.

huée, a whooting.

huer, to whoot at.

Huguenot, a Huguenot.

hune, the scuttle of a mast.

hupe, a lap-wing, or pewet.

bure,

hure, clotted hair.*butte*, a soldier's hut.*hurler*, to howl:

H is also pronounced with aspiration in the derivatives of the above; as in *hardiesse*, boldness, and *enhardir*, to embolden, from *hardi*; in *honteux*, shameful, from *honte*; in *hausser*, from *haut*; in *enharnacher*, to adorn with trappings, from *harnacher*, &c. Except in *exhausser*, to raise up; and the words coming from *héros*, as in *héroïne*, heroine; *héroïsme*, heroism; *héroïque*, heroic; which are pronounced without aspiration.

When *h* is found in the middle of any words that are not compounds of those contained in the above list, it is not aspirated, and seems only to have been put there to make the two vowels be pronounced separately, as in *trahir*, to betray; *envahir*, to invade.

Although *h* is not aspirated in *huit*, eight; *huitième*, eighth; and *huitaine*, eight days; you must write and pronounce without elision or connection, *le huit*, the eight; *du huit*, of, or from the eight; *le huitième*, the eighth; *du huitième*, of, or from the eighth; *la huitième*, *de la huitième*; *la huitaine*, *les huit*, *dans huit*, &c.

H in the name *Henri*, Henry; ought always to be aspirated, both in conversation and in poetry, or a declamatory discourse. So you must say, *les exploits de Henri quatre*, the exploits of Henry the Fourth; and not, *les exploits d'Henri quatre*.

Note, When *h* is preceded by *c*, *r*, or *t*, it is mute, and serves only to mark the Greek etymology; as, in *Jésus Christ*, &c. Pron. *Jésu Kri*. Vide p. 15, near the bottom.

J.

The pronunciation of this consonant before the five vowels is like that of *g* before *e* and *i*, as in *jardin*, garden; *Jérusalem*, Jerusalem; *j'ignore*, I am ignorant; *j'ordonne*, I order; *jumeau*, a twin, &c.

K.

This letter always sounds hard, and is only to be found in words coming from other languages; as, *Kermès*, kermes; *Kyrielle*, Litany, &c.

L.

L is generally sounded at the end of words; as, *ail*, garlick; *Avril*, April; *babil*, troublesome talk; *bel*, fair; *betail*, cattle; *Bresil*, Brasil; *civil*, civil; *conseil*, council; *deuil*, mourning; *exil*, exile; *fil*, thread; *mal*, evil; *mil*, millet; *nouvel*, news; *péril*, danger; *royal*, royal; *sel*, salt; *subtil*, fly; *seul*, alone; *tel*, such; *vil*, vile; *vol*, flight, &c.

EXCEPTIONS. *L* is mute in *barril*, barrel; *cul*, breach; *chenil*, a dog-kennel; *fusil*, musket; *gentil*, genteel; and *il*, he, before a consonant, and even before a vowel in asking a question; as, *il fait*, he does; *parle-t-il à moi?* does he speak to me? but when there is no question, it must be pronounced before the vowel; and it is always mute in the plural; *nombril*, navel; *soul*, drunk; *outil*, tool; *persil*, parsley; *sourcil*, eyebrow; *Toul*, the name of a town; *fileul*, God-son.

L is changed into *u* in *col*, neck; *fol*, mad; *licol*, halter; *mol*, soft; *sol*, penny; which are now generally written, and always pronounced *cou*, *fou*, *licou*, *mou*, *sou*. *Il* is lost in *Genouil*, knee; *verrouil*, a bolt, which are also generally written, and always pronounced *Genou*, *verrou*: but if any of these words comes before another beginning with a vowel, the *l* is retained, and must be pronounced.

Also say *b mol*, *b flat*, a term in music; *le col de la matrice*, the neck of the matrix; *le col de la vessie*, the neck of the bladder; *le col de pertuis*, a pass in the *Pyrénées*; and *le col de Tende*, a pass in *Savoy*; and not *b mou*, *le cou de la matrice*, &c.

L is sounded at the beginning, and in the middle of words; as, *fille*, girl; *famille*, family; *caillou*, flint; *vieillard*,

vieillard, old man; *souillure*, filth; *cueillir*, to gather; and *gentil* in *gentilhomme*, gentleman; but it is mute in the plural. In the above examples *l* has a liquid sound. In *ville*, a town; *tranquille*, calm; *argille*, white clay; *idylle*, an idyl; *Achille*, Achilles; *distiller*, to distil; *imbecille*, weakly; *pupille*, pupil; *syllabe*, syllable; *mille*, thousand, though it be pronounced, it has not the liquid sound.

It is mute in *quelque*, some; *quelqu'un*, somebody; *quelconque*, whosoever; *fil*, son; and *pouls*, pulse.

R E M A R K S.

1. **D** OUBLE *ll*, if not preceded by *i*, is pronounced like a single one.

2. When *l* has a liquid sound, it is always preceded by *i*, and sometimes it is followed by another liquid *l*; but the second is only added to connect it with the following vowel.

3. *J* is sometimes preceded by a simple, or a compound vowel, with which it is joined, and with which it makes only one syllable, and the simple vowel that precedes it can only be *a* or *e*; as, *bail*, lease; *émail*, enamel; *travailler*, to work; *bouteille*, bottle; *pareil*, like; *vermeil*, vermillion; and the compound can only be *ou*, or *eu*; as, *bouillir*, to boil; *feuille*, to search or rifle; *rouille*, rust; *seuil*, threshold; *feuille*, leaf, &c.

4. The French put *ue* instead of *eu*, after the consonants *c* and *g*, when they are to be pronounced hard; as, *cercueil*, coffin; *orgueil*, pride, &c.: for if *eu* was put after these consonants, one would be apt to pronounce *cerseuil*, *orjeuil*, as *c* takes the sound of *s*, and *g* that of *j* before *e*.

5. *L* is never liquid at the beginning of words.

M.

Mm, in the middle of words sound only as one; as, *immédiatement*, immediately; *homme*, man; *commode*, commodious, &c. Pron. *imédiatemang*, *âme*, *comède*.

When *m* comes before *n* it generally sounds like *n*; as, *damner*, to damn; *colonne*, column, &c. Pron. *danné*, *colonne*. Except *amnistie*, amnesty; *hymne*, hymn; *indamner*, to indemnify; with *calomnie*, calumny; and its derivatives; as also some proper names, and Hebrew words; such as, *Jupiter-Ammon*, *Agamemnon*, &c. Pron. *am-nistie*, *hym-ne*, *èing-dam-nisé*, *calom-nie*, *Jupiter-Am-mon*, *Aga-mem-non*.

* * For what farther relates to the pronunciation of this letter, see the nasal vowels and diphthongs.

N.

This letter takes the sound of *u* in *convent*, convent; *concombre*, cucumber; which are now written *couvent*, *coucombre*. Pron. *coo-vang*, *côo-cong-bre*.

Nn coming together in the middle of words, are pronounced only like one; as, *annuel*, annuel; *anneau*, ring; *année*, year; *innover*, to innovate, &c. Pron. *anuel*, *ano*, *anée*, *inové*.

N At the end of words derived from the Hebrew and Greek languages retains its natural hard sound; as, *Amen*, amen; *examen*, examination; *hymen*, marriage, &c.

N At the end of an adjective, or pronoun followed by a vowel, or *h* mute sounds double; but followed by a consonant it retains its ringing nasal sound; as, *un bon ami*, a good friend; *un éternel adieu*, an everlasting farewell; *ton habit*, thy coat; *son roi*, his king, &c. Pron. *ung bon-nami*, *un-néternel adieu*, *ton-nabi*, *song-roè*.

N Is always mute in the third person plural of verbs ending in *ent*; as, *ils chantent*, they sing; *ils aimoient*, they loved, &c. Pron. *i sbangte*, *i zème*.

In

In the general pronoun *on*, they; and *en* the preposition or conjunctive particle, *n* is to be pronounced when they precede other words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and from which they are inseparable; as, *on abonde*, they abound; *en étudiant*, in studying, &c. but *on* being after its verb, and *en* after an imperative, *n* must not be pronounced along with the ensuing word, with whatever letter it may begin; as, *va-t-on à la campagne?* do they go to the country? *donnez-en à un autre*, give some of it to another, &c. Pron. *va-t-on à la campagne? doné-zang à un-nôtre*.

N Is lost in *monseigneur*, sir. Pron. *mosieu*; and it is never pronounced in *non*, no; except in a declamatory discourse, or immediately connected with the following word.

* * * For what farther relates to the pronunciation of this letter, see the nasal vowels and diphthongs.

P.

P Is generally mute at the end of words; as, *camp*, camp; *champ*, field; *loup*, wolf; *drap*, cloth; *coup*, shot, thrust, blow; Ex. *le camp ennemi*, the enemies camp; *un champ étendu*, a wide field, &c. Pron. *le kang énnemi, ung shang étangdu*: but it is pronounced in *cap*, cape; *Gap*, the name of a town in Provence; *julep*, julep; *cep*, a vine; *galop*, galoping.

It is pronounced in *beaucoup*, much; and *trop*, too much; before a vowel or *h* mute; as, *il a beaucoup étudié*, he has studied much; *vous êtes trop heureux*, you are too happy, &c. Pron. *Il a beaucoo-pétudié, veo-zé-te tro-peureu*.

It is mute in the following words; *baptême*, baptism; *baptiser*, to baptize; *baptistère*, church-register; *ptisane*, ptisan; *psaume*, psalm; *sept*, seven; *temps*, time; *corps*, body; *prompt*, ready; *exempt*, free; and *septième*, seventh; but it is pronounced in *baptismal*, baptismal; *psalmiste*, psalmist; *psalmodier*, to sing psalms; *psalmodie*, singing of psalms; *psalterion*, psaltery; *psautier*.

tier, psalter; *septante*, seventy; *exemption*, excoemed; *septuagénnaire*, seventy; *septuagésime*, sepruagesima; *Septembre*, September; *septentrion*, the north; and *rapt*, rape.

Write and pronounce *neveu*, nephew; *nièce*, niece; *nôce*, wedding; and not *nepveu*, *niepce*, *nôpce*.

Ph Sounds like an *F*; as, *phénix*, a phenix; *philosophe*, a philosopher, &c. Pron. *Fénix*, *filosofe*.

Q.

This letter sounds like *k*, and generally takes a mute *u* after it; as, *qualité*, quality; *quête*, begging; *quitance*, a discharge, &c. Pron. *kalité*, *kète*, *kittangse*. At the end of words it sometimes takes no *u* after it; as, *coq*, a cock, a ships cook; *cing*, five. Pron. *kok*, *cèingk*. But it is mute in *coq d'Inde*, a Turkey cock; and *cing*, when it comes before a word beginning with a consonant; as, *cing femmes*, five women, &c. Pron. *kò d'èingde*, *cèing*, *fame*.

Qua, sounds *kooa* in *aquatique*, aquatic; *équateur*, equator; *équation*, equation; *quadragénnaire*, forty years old; *quadragésime*, quadragesima; *quadrangulaire*, four square; *quadrature*, quadrature; *quadrupede*, four footed. Pron. *akoo-atik*, *ékoo-ateur*, *ékoo-afiong*, *koo-adrajénnaire*, *koo-a-drajésime*, &c.

The first syllable is pronounced *kuing* and the second *kooa* in *quinquagénnaire*, *quinquagésime*. Pron. *kuing-kooajénnaire*, *kuing-kooajésime*.

Equestre, a figure on horseback; *équiangle*, equiangle; are pronounced *éku-èstre*, *ékui-angle*.

It is always mute in *Laqs*, noose, or knot; Pron. *La*.

R.

R is Sounded,

1. At the end of words terminating in *ar*, *air*, and in all monosyllables in *er*, with the sound of the open *è*, whether before a vowel, or a consonant; as, *car*, for; *par*, by; *clair*, clear; *pair*, peer; *fer*, iron; *mer*, sea, &c.

2. In

2. In all nouns in *or, oir, ur, our*; as, *or*, gold, *tréfor*, treasure; *dortoir*, dormitory; *miroir*, looking-glass; *mouchoir*, handkerchief; *pur*, pure; *sûr*, sure; (but it is mute in *sur*, on, or upon, the preposition;) *obscur*, dark; *cour*, court; *amour*, love, &c. and also in all the infinitives of verbs in *oir*, of the third conjugation; as, *voir*, to see; *vouloir*, to be willing, &c.

3. In verbal nouns in *eur*; as, *diseur*, a teller; *compteur*, a counter; *porteur*, a carrier, &c.

It is mute,

1. At the end of all infinitives of the first conjugation whether before a vowel or consonant, except in poetry, or in a declamatory discourse; as, *aimer à lire*, to love to read; *donner à manger*, to give eating, &c. Pron. *aimé à lire, donné à manjé*.

2. At the end of the infinitives of the second conjugation, when coming alone, or before words beginning with a consonant; as, *convenir de tout*, to agree to every thing; *dormir sur le paille*, to sleep on straw, &c. Pron. *conveni de too, dormi su le paille*; but it must be sounded before words beginning with a vowel; as, *dormir ensemble*, to sleep together, &c. Pron. *dormirang sangble*.

3. At the end of verbal nouns of the second conjugation; as, *le repentir*, repentance; *le souvenir*, remembrance; *le dormir*, sleep, &c.

4. It is mute in all nouns ending in *er* and *ier* with the sound of *é* masculine, having more than one syllable; as, *danger*, danger; *horloger*, watch-maker; *acier*, steel; *métier*, trade, &c. Pron. *danjé, horlojé, acié, métié*. But it is pronounced in *leger*, light; *cancer*, a cancer; *amer*, bitter; *cher*, dear; *hiver*, winter; *enfer*, hell; and in all proper names, except *Didier*, and *Oger*, which are generally pronounced *Didié, Ojé*.

5. In *autre*, other; *notre*, our; *votre*, your; and *quatre*, four; when they come before words beginning with a consonant; but when the next word begins with a vowel, sound the *r*; as, *une autre affaire*, another affair;

fair; *notre ami*, our friend; *votre amant*, your lover; *quatre hommes*, four men.

R E M A R K S.

1. *Rr* **S**ounds much harder than single *r*; as, *la guerre ne dura guere*, the war did not last long.
2. In verse and a declamatory discourse, you must sound final *r* a little in most words; otherways there would be a hiatus.

S.

When *S* at the end of a word, has a vowel immediately before it, and when the following word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, it takes the sound of *z*, and joins to the vowel after it; as, *faites encore le même*, do the same again; *les anges & les hommes*, angels and men, &c. Pron. *fète zangcore le même, là zangje zè là zôme*.

When it comes between two vowels in the middle of a word it sounds also like *z*; as, *misere*, misery; *raison*, reason; *visage*, face, &c. Pron. *mizère, raizon*, &c. Except *parasol*, an umbrella; and such words as take the preposition *pré* immediately before *S*; as, *préséance*, precedency; *présentir*, to feel before-hand, &c. in which *s* retains its natural sound.

When any of the consonants *d, g, p, t, &c.* comes before final *S*, it must not be pronounced, when the ensuing word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, but only the *s*, which takes the sound of *z*, and joins to the vowel that follows; as, *grands amis*, great friends; *les rangs étoient doubles*, the ranks were double; *les loups & les brebis*, the wolves and the sheep; *les chats & les rats*, the cats and the rats, &c. Pron. *gran-zami, lé rang-zète double, lé lou-zè lé brebi, lé sba-zè lé ra*.

S or any other consonant in the same syllable, after *c, f, l, r* is not sounded, if the following word begins with

with a consonant; as, *les sacs de blé*, the sacks of corn; *les fugitifs de l'armée*, the fugitives of the army; *l'art de bien parler*, the art of speaking well, &c. Pron. *lê sac de blé*, *lê fugitif de l'armée*, *l'ar de bien parlê*, &c. nor often though it begins with a vowel; as, *les vers & la prose*, verse and prose; *les Juifs & les Turcs*, the Jews and Turks, &c. Pron. *lê vèr & la proze*, *lê Juif & lê Turc*: but *t* after *r* is always sounded in verbs which ask a question; as, *dort-il?* does he sleep? *meurt-il?* does he die? &c. and if *d* comes after *r* it sounds like *t*; as, *perd-il?* does he lose? *mord-il?* does he bite? &c. Pron. *dor-ti?* *meur-ti?* *pèr-ti?* *mor-ti?*

S Is sounded in *sens*, sense; to distinguish it in pronunciation from *sang*, blood; and *sans*, without.

It is not sounded in the following words ending in *is*, whether before a vowel or consonant; as, *bis*, *brebis*, *débris*, *denis*, *chassis*, *fourmis*, *hachis*, *paradis*, *cliquetis*, *lis*, *perdris*, *rubis*, *souris*, *sourcis*, *tabis*, *tapis*, *treillis*, and in the following *à réculons*, *à tatons*, *dispos*, *dessus*, *dessous*, and in *coutelas*, *matelas*, *matras*, *nicolas*, *fatras*, *bois*, *chamois*, *mois*, *os*, *propos*, *repos*, *jus*, *verjus*, *reclus*, *refus*, *camus*, nor in *pas*, except before a vowel in poetry.

S Is sounded in all words having *ist*, or *yst* in them; as, *casuiste*, a casuist; *cristal*, cristal; *améthyste*, amethyst; *mystere*, mystery, &c.

It is sounded in all the terminations in *isme*; as, *catéchisme*, catechisme; *christianisme*, christianity, &c.

It is pronounced in all nouns composed with prepositions and end in *scription*; as, *inscription*, inscription; *circonscription*, circumscription, &c. Their verbs also sound the *S*; as, *inscrire*, to inscribe; *prescrire*, to prescribe, &c.

It is sounded in the words which begin with *abs*, as, *bis*, *cas*, *cons*, *dis*, *ins*, *obs*, *pers*, *pos*, *pros*, *subt*, *sus*, and *trans*; as, *abstenir*, to abstain; *astre*, star; *biscuit*, biscuit; *castor*, beaver; *conspirer*, to conspire; *disputer*, to dispute; *instruire*, to instruct; *obscur*, obscure; *persuader*

suader, to persuade; *poster*, to post; *prosterner*, to prostrate; *subsister*, to subsist; *sustenter*, to sustain; *transporter*, to transport; and their derivatives; but it sounds like *z* in *transfiger*, to transact; *transaëtion*, transaction; *transitif*, transitive; *transition*, transition; and *transitoir*, transitory, &c. Pron. *tran-zijé*, *tran-zaëtion*, &c.

It sounds before *q* or *c* hard; as, *bourasque*, a hurricane; *lorsque*, when; *discrétion*, discretion; but it is mute in *pasques*, easter.

It is mute at the end of words before a consonant, or any point; except in *pus* the corrupted matter of a fore; *vis*, screw; and in proper names, with some words from the Latin; as, *Bachus*, *Venus*, *bolus*, *Carolus*, *calus*, *orémus*, *committimus*, &c. and in *Jesus* when alone; but when *Christ* is added, you must pronounce *Jé-su-kri*.

f In the middle of words is pronounced like a single one strong; as, *ressembler*, to resemble; *ressentir*, to resent; *poisson*, fish, &c. Pron. *re-semblé*, *re-senti*, *poë-song*.

S In *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *mes*, *tes*, *ces*, *ses*, *les*, *des*, *très*, *dans*, *sans*, *trois*, *après*, *plus*, *mais*, *pas*, is always mute before a word beginning with a consonant; or before any point; but before a vowel or *h* mute, it sounds *z*.

* A noun ending with a consonant, that is short in the singular, becomes long in the plural when it takes *s* or *x* to form it; as, *fac*, *chef*, *fagôt*, &c. *facs*, *chefs*, *fagôts*.

A LIST of most WORDS wherein *f* is sounded.

Abstenir, to forbear.
accoster, &c. to accost one.
administer, &c. to govern.
aduste, &c. over-heated.
ajuster, &c. to adjust,
apostat, &c. apostate.
aposter, to appoint.
apostiller, &c. to write a
 postscript.

apostolat, apostleship.
apostolique, apostolic.
apostrophe, &c. apostrophe.
apostume, &c. impostume.
aspect, aspect, sight.
asperge, asparagus.
aspersion, sprinkling.
aspic, asp.
aspirer, &c. to draw breath.
assister

assister, to assist.
assistance, assistance.
astre, star.
astrolabe, &c. an astrolabe.
astrologue, &c. an astrologer.
astronome, astronomer.
astronomie, &c. astronomy.
attester, &c. to attest, assure.
attrister, to grieve.
Auguste, &c. August.
auspice, omen.
austere, &c. austere, rigid.
austral, austral.
Balistraire, engineer of old.
baliste, a balista.
balustrade, a baluster.
balustre, a rail.
baptismal, baptismal.
batiste, baptist.
basque, the skirt of a doublet.
baste, &c. basto, the ace of clubs.
bastile, bastile.
bastion, bulwark.
bastonnade, a cudgelling.
bestial, &c. beastly.
bestiole, an insect.
biscotin, dough baked with sugar.
biscornu, crooked, cramp.
biscuit, biscuit.
bisque, bisk.
bistorte, snake-weed.
bistouri, an incision knife.

bistre, soot and water mixed.
blaspheme, &c. blasphemy.
bourasque, sudden and violent storm.
bourg-mestre, burgh-master.
brusque, &c. blunt, rash, &c.
busque, &c. busk.
buste, a bust.
Cascade, a water-fall.
casque, a helmet.
castor, a castor.
castrametation, encamping.
catastrophe, catastrophe.
caustique, a caustic.
celeste, heavenly.
chaste, &c. chaste, pure.
christianisme, christianity.
circonscription, &c. circumscription.
circonspect, &c. wary.
circonstance, &c. circumstance.
clandestin, &c. clandestine.
combustible, combustible.
combustion, combustion.
confiscable, &c. forfeitable.
confisquer, to confiscate.
consister, to consist.
consistoire, consistory.
conspirer, &c. to plot.
constance, &c. constancy.
constellation, constellation.
consterner, &c. to astonish.
constiper,

confipier, &c. to consipate.

constituer, &c. to constitute.

construire, &c. to build, construe.

consubstantiel, &c. consubstantial.

contester, &c. to contend.

contraster, &c. to contrast.

contrescarpe, &c. counter-scarp.

contrister, &c. to grieve.

correspondre, &c. to correspond.

cosmétique, cosmetic.

cosmographe, &c. cosmographer.

crépuscule, twilight.

custode, &c. a warden, &c.

Damasquiner, &c. to damasquine.

débusquer, &c. to turn out.

démasquer, &c. to unmask.

démonstration, demonstration.

démonstratif, demonstrative.

désastre, &c. disaster.

déscription, description.

désespoir, &c. despair.

désespérer, &c. to despair.

desister, to desist.

destin, &c. fate, destiny.

destituer, &c. to depose.

destruction, destruction.

destruëteur, destroyer.

détestable, &c. detestable.

détester, &c. to abhor.

dévastation, devastation.

digeste, pandects.

digestion, &c. digestion.

disception, disception.

discerner, &c. to discern.

disciple, a disciple.

discipline, &c. discipline.

discontinuer, &c. to discontinue.

disconvenir, &c. to disagree.

discordant, dissonant.

discorde, &c. discord, odds.

discoureur, &c. a talker.

discret, &c. discreet.

disculper, &c. to clear, &c.

discussif, discussive.

discussion, discussion.

discuter, &c. to discuss.

disgrace, &c. disgrace.

disjoint, &c. disjointed.

disjonctif, &c. disjunctive.

dislocation, dislocation.

disloquer, &c. to disjoint.

disparité, disparity.

disparaître, &c. to disappear.

dispense, &c. dispensation.

disperser, &c. to disperse.

dispos, active, nimble.

disposer, &c. to dispose.

disproportion, &c. disproportion.

dispute, &c. dispute.

disque, disk, suns disk.

disquisition, disquisition.

distance, &c. distance.

distendre, &c. to distend.
distiller,

dist
dist
dist

dist
dist
dist
dist
dom

drog
duel

dyna

Ecc

emb

emp

Epis

epist

escab

escab

escac

escal

escap

escar

escar

escar

escan

escan

escog

escop

escort

escoua

f

escri

escroc

escroq

distiller, &c. to distil.
distinct, &c. distinct.
distinguer, &c. to distinguish.
distique, a distich.
distraindre, &c. to distract.
distribuer, &c. to distribute.
district, district.
domestique, &c. domestic.
droguiste, druggist.
dueliste, dueller.
dynastie, dynasty.
Ecclesiaste, &c. Ecclesiastes.
embuscade, ambush.
empester, &c. to infect.
Episcopal, &c. Episcopal.
epistolaire, epistolary.
escabeau, m. } a joint stool.
escabelle, f. }
escadron, a squadron of dragoons.
escalade, &c. scaling.
escapade, the sling of a horse.
escargot, a shell snail.
escarmouche, &c. pickeering
escarpoulette, a flying chair.
escandre, disaster.
esclave, &c. slave.
escogrife, a spunger.
escopette, &c. petronel, carabine.
escorte, a guard, convoy.
escouade, &c. a squad, 3d part of a company of foot.
escrime, &c. tilting.
escroc, a shark, sharper.
escroquer, &c. to chouse.

espace, a space.
espadon, a sword of two handles.
espalier, espalier, &c.
espalle, the 1st seat of rowers.
espatule, a spatula.
espece, species, sort.
esperer, &c. to hope.
espiegle, &c. a wag.
espion, &c. a spy.
esplanade, esplanade, glacis.
espoir, hope.
esponton, half pike.
esprit, a spirit, ghost, &c.
espurge, spurge.
esquif, a skiff, ship-boat.
esquille, splinter of a broken bone.
esquinance, squinancy.
esquipot, a barber's money box.
esquisse, a sketch.
esquisser, to sketch.
esquiver, to shun, avoid.
est, the east.
estacade, a stacado.
estaffete, an express, courier.
estafier, an attendant.
estafilade, a slash, rent.
*estambord, stern-*post.
estampe, &c. a stamp, print.
estime, &c. esteem.
estive, trimming of a ship.
estoc, &c. a long rapier.
estomac, the stomach.
estrade, an alcove, &c.
estragon,

- estragon*, terragon, herb.
estramaçon, back-sword.
estrapade, strapado.
esturgeon, a sturgeon.
estropier, &c. to lame.
Fantastique, &c. whimsical.
fantastique, chimerical.
faſte, vain ſhow.
faſtidieux, nauſious.
faſtueux, proud.
feſtin, feaſt.
feſton, feſtoon.
flaſque, a flaſk, lazy-bones.
fruſtrer, &c. to fruſtrate.
funeſte, &c. fatal.
fuſte, a kind of gally.
fuſtiger, &c. to whip.
Gascon, &c. a great boafter.
gaſpiller, &c. to ſpoil.
geſte, geſture.
geſticular, to geſture.
geſtion, conduct.
Hiſtoire, &c. hiſtory.
holocauſte, burnt-offering.
hoſpitalité, hoſpitality.
hoſtie, &c. victim.
hoſtile, &c. hoſtile.
houſpiller, to touſe.
houſpillon, kelty.
Jafmin, jaſmine.
jaſpe, &c. jaſper.
inceſte, &c. inceſt.
inconstant, &c. inconstant.
indigeſte, &c. undigeſted.
indiscret, &c. indiscreet.
indispensable, indispensable
indispoſition, indispoſition.
indispoſé, indispoſed.
indiftinct, &c. confused.
induftrie, &c. induftry.
ineſpéré, &c. unexpected.
ineſtimable, &c. ineſtima-
 ble.
injuſte, &c. unjuſt.
intefſin, intefſine.
inveſtir, &c. to inveſt.
jurifconſulte, a lawyer.
jurifprudence, jurifpru-
 dence.
juſquiamé, hen-bane.
juſte, &c. juſt, right.
Languiſte, a kind of lobſter.
langouſſin, a prawn.
lanſquenét, lanſquenét.
légiſlateur, legiſlator.
leſte, &c. ſpruce, fine.
luſtre, a ſpace of 5 years.
Majeſté, &c. majeſty.
manuſcrit, manuſcript.
maſcarade, a maſcarade.
maſque, &c. a maſk.
maſculin, maſculine.
maſtic, &c. maſtich.
microcoſme, a microcoſm.
microſcope, microſcope.
modeſte, &c. modeſt.
moleſter, &c. to moleſt.
monaſtere, monaſtery.
monaſtique, monaſtic.
monſtre, a monſter.
monſtrueux, &c. monſtrous.
mouſquet, &c. a muſket.
mouſtache, whiſker.
muſc, muſk.
muſcade, nutmeg.
muſcadet, muſcadel.
 muſcadin,

muscadin, muscadine.
muscle, &c. muscle.
mystique, &c. mystical.
Nonobstant, notwithstanding.
Opusculé, a little book.
ostentation, ostentation.
ostéologie, osteology.
ostracisme, ostracismus.
ostralin, an easterling.
ouest, west, westwind.
Palestre, wrestling place.
paschal, paschal.
pasquerette, the large daisy.
pasquin, } a pasquil.
pasquenade, }
pastel, pastel, wood.
pastenade, parsnep.
pasteur, pastor, shepherd.
pastoral, &c. pastoral.
perspective, landscape.
perspicacité, } clearness.
perspicuité, }
peste, &c. plague.
piédestal, pedestal.
pilastre, a pilaster.
pistache, &c. pistachio.
pistole, pistole.
pistolet, &c. a pistol.
piston, sucker of a pump.
plastron, plastron.
poste, post, station.
postérieur, &c. hind, hinder.
posthume, posthumous.
postiche, postic, &c.
postillon, a postilion..
postposer, to postpone.

posture, posture.
predestiner, &c. to predestinate.
prestance, noble carriage.
prestige, prestige.
prescrire, &c. to prescribe.
presbytere, &c. parsonage.
pronostic, &c. presage.
prosperer, &c. to prosper.
prosterner, &c. to prostrate.
prostituer, &c. to prostitute.
protester, &c. to protest.
pustule, pimple.
Question, &c. question.
Rescrit, rescript.
respect, &c. respect.
respirer, &c. to breathe.
resplendir, &c. to shine.
responsable, responsible.
restaurer, &c. to restore.
reste, &c. rest, remnant.
restituer, &c. to restore.
restrictif, binding.
restriction, limitation.
restringent, restraining.
risdale, rix-dollar.
risposte, &c. a pary and thrust.
risque, &c. risk.
robuste, &c. strong.
rustaud, &c. clownish.
rustique, &c. rural, &c.
rustre, a boor, clown, churl.
Satisfaire, &c. to satisfy.
Sébastien, Sebastian.
semestre, six months together.

sequeſtrer, &c. to ſequeſtrate.

Silveſtre, Sylveſter.

ſolſtice, &c. ſolſtice.

ſouſcrire, &c. to ſubſcribe.

ſpaſme, ſpalm.

ſuggeſtion, ſuggeſtion.

Terreſtre, earthly.

teſter, &c. to make ones will.

teſtament, &c. teſtament.

teſticule, teſticle.

teſtiſier, to teſtify.

teſtimonial, a teſtimonial.

teſton, teſtoon.

Tiſbé, Thyſbé.

Toſcan, a Tuſcan.

Vaſte, &c. large.

Ubiquiſte, a divinity Dr.

veſtale, a veſtal nun.

veſte, a waſtcoat.

veſtiaire, veſtry.

veſtibuſe, entry, porch.

veſtige, veſtige, ſtep.

viſcoſité, clamynels.

Zeſt, a zeſt.

* It is better to pronounce *s* in *maître de camp*, than not.

Note 1. That we have not inſerted in this liſt any of the words mentioned in the foregoing rules.

2. That when you ſee, &c. after a word it means, and its derivatives.

3. That we have not inſerted proper names coming from foreign languages, ſuch as, *Ariſtote*, *Auguſtin*, *Demofthene*, &c. which pronounce the *s* conform to the languages from which they come.

T.

When *ti* is followed by an *a*, *e* feminine, or an *o*, it is generally ſounded like *ci*; as, *martial*, martial; *partial*, partial; *dévoſieux*, religious; *patience*, patience; *action*, action; *ambition*, ambition, &c. Pron. *marcial*, *parcial*, *dévociu*, *paciangſe*, *akſiong*, *anghici-ong*.

EXCEPTIONS.

T retains its natural ſound,

1. When *ti* is preceded by *s* or *x*; as, *baſtion*, baſtion; *queſtion*, queſtion; *mixtion*, mixture, &c.

2. In

2. In words ended in *tie*, *tié*, and *tier*; as, *ortie*, a nettle; *partie*, part, or party; *amitié*, friendship; *métier*, trade, &c. But *t* is pronounced soft like *c* in *aristocratie*, aristocracy; *balbutier*, to lisp; *ineptie*, impertinence; *initier*, to initiate; *prophétie*, prophecy; *primatie*, primacy; and the nouns composed of *man-**tie*, divination, such as, *chiromantie*, chiromancy; *nécromantie*, necromancy; and some proper names of men and provinces; as, *Domitien*, *Dioeletien*, *Gratien*, *Dalmatie*, *Galatie*, *Lusatie*, &c.

3. In the nasal diphthong, with the sound of *è* open; as, *il contient*, he contains; *Chrétien*, christian; *entretien*, conversation; *soutien*, stay, prop; *tien*, *tienne*, thine, &c.

4. In verbs; as, *nous portions*, we carried; *vous portiez*, you carried; *nous sortions*, we went out; *vous sortiez*, you went out; *nous étions*, we were; *vous étiez*, you were, &c.

5. Before the vowels *a*, *e*, *o*, *u*, having *c* before *t*; as, *dictateur*, dictator; *bien-faïcteur*, benefactor; *Pactole*, the name of a river; *facture*, invoice, &c.

* * You may say indifferently *bien-faïcteur*, or *bien-faïcteur*; but in the feminine, it is better to say *bien-faïctrice*, than *bien-faïctrice*.

T is always pronounced,

1. At the end of verbs in the third persons, singular and plural; and in participles in *ant*, before a vowel; as, *il met en danger*, he endangers; *ils vinrent à moi*, they came to me; *allant à Rome*, going to Rome, &c. Pron. *i-mè-tang-dang jé*, *i vèinre-tà moè*, *allang-tà Rome*.

2. In the following, whether before a vowel or consonant, viz. *brut*, dot, dowery; *fat*, *mat*, *zénit*, *correct*, *direct*, *exact*, *indirect*, *paët*; in the last five *c* is also pronounced, and in *est*, east; *ouest*, west; *nordest*, north-east; *zest*, a zest, the *s* is pronounced likewise. It is also pronounced in *c'est*, the verb to distinguish it from the pronouns *ces* and *ses*. Pron. *c'èt*.

3. In *vingt*, twenty; before a substantive beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as, *vingt amis*, twenty friends; *vingt hommes*, twenty men, &c. Pron. *vèng-tami*, *vèng-tôme*; and also before a noun of number, whether it begins with a vowel or consonant; as, *vingt & un*, twenty-one; *vingt & deux*, twenty-two; *vingt cinq*, twenty-five, &c. But before other words that begin with a consonant it is mute; as, *vingt poires*, twenty pears; *vingt sous*, twenty-pence, &c. Pron. *vèng poère*; *vèng sou*. The *g* in *vingt* is always mute.

4. In *sept*, seven; but *p* is always mute.

5. In *cent*, a hundred; before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as, *cent écus*, a hundred crowns; *cent hommes*, a hundred men, &c. Pron. *sang-técu*; *sang-tôme*; but before nouns of number it is always mute; as *cent un*, a hundred and one; *cent onze*, a hundred and eleven; *un cent ou deux*, a hundred or two, &c. Pron. *sang ung*, *sang ongez*, *ung sang oo dû*.

6. When *t* is preceded by a vowel, and when the following word begins with a vowel or *h* mute; as, *un état affreux*, a frightful state; *il fait un livre*, he composes a book; *un effet horrible*, a terrible effect, &c. Pron. *û-néta-taffrû*, *i fè-tung livre*, *û-neffè-terrible*; but it is always mute in the plural, *états étendus*, large estates; *effets horribles*, terrible effects, &c. Pron. *èta-zétangdu*, *effè-zorrible*.

7. Always in the adverbs and conjunctions, only before words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as, *fort étourdi*, very stupid; *autant ou plus*, as much or more; *incontinent après*, immediately after, &c. Pron. *for-tétourdi*, *ôtang-too-plû*, *èncongtinang-tapè*.

* * *Th* in words coming from the Greek found only like *t*; as, *Théologie*, *Thraſonique*, &c. Pron. *Téologie*, *Traſonique*.

T is always mute,

1. At the end of substantives, in conversation, after *n* or *r*; as, *enfant enjoué*, a merry child; *départ affligeant*, a sad departure, &c. Pron. *angfang angjoué*,
dépar

dépar affijang : but if it is an adjective immediately joined to its substantive you must pronounce the *t* before a vowel or *h* mute ; as, *prompt accident*, a sudden accident ; *savant homme*, a learned man, &c. Pron. *prong-takfidang*, *savang-tâme*. And it is mute in adjectives coming before the conjunction & ; as, *savant & aimable*, learned and amiable ; *prompt & valage*, passionate and fickle, &c. Pron. *savang è èmable*, *prong è valage*.

2. In *Août*, August, and the conjunction *et* or & and ; whether before a vowel or consonant ; as, *il vint au mois d'Août à Lisbonne*, he came to Lisbon in the month of August ; *venez & allez bien vite*, come and go very quick, &c. Pron. *i vèng-o moè d'oo à Lisbonne*, *vené-zè allé bien vite*.

3. In the middle of compound words followed by a consonant ; as, *avant-coureur*, fore-runner ; *postposer*, to postpone, &c. Pron. *avang-coureur*, *pos-pozé*.

4. In *aspect*, *instinct*, *respect*, *suspect* ; but pronounce the *c*.

* * Several authors leave out *t* in the plural of nouns, terminating their singular in *nt*, and write *enfant*, *enfants* ; *un bâtiment*, *des batimens*, &c. but it is better to retain it, and write *enfants*, *batiments*. When we come to the formation of the plural of nouns, this shall be spoken of at more length.

X.

X Sounds *cs*,

1. At the beginning of words ; as, *Xerxès*, *Xénophon*, *Xavier*, &c. Pron. *Csercsès*, *Csénofon*, *Csavier*.

2. Before a consonant in the middle of words ; as, *dextre*, right-hand ; *excuser*, to excuse ; *exclamation*, exclamation ; *experience*, experience, &c. Pron. *decstre*, *ecscuser*, *ecsclamasióng*.

3. In the middle, or at the end of words borrowed from the Greek ; as, *Alexandre*, *axiome*, *Ajax*, *authrax*, *borax*, *lynx*, *onyx*, *phénix*, *storax*, *styx* ; and also in

perplex, préfix. Pron. *Alexandre, acsiome, Ajacs, autracs, boracs, lyncs, onycs, &c.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1. When *x* comes before *c*, followed by an *e* or an *i*, it sounds like *ks*; as, *excellence, excellency; exciter*, to excite, &c. Pron. *eksellangse, eksité.*

2. When *x* comes in the end of a syllable, before a vowel, or *h* mute, it generally sounds like *gz*; as, *exalter*, to exalt; *exemple, example; exhorter*, to exhort; *exhaler*, to exhale, &c. Pron. *ègzalté, ègzample, ègzorter, ègzalé.* But it sounds like *ks* in *apoplexie*, an apoplexy; *fixer*, to fix; *flexion*, bending; *flexible*, pliable; *maxime, maxim; vexation, vexation*; and their derivatives. Pron. *a-poplek-sie, fik-sé, &c.*

3. It sounds like *fs* in *soixante, fixty; soixantieme, sixtieth*; and *auxerre, auxonne, Uxelles, Flexelles, Bruxelles, -Saint Maixant*; and perhaps a few more: Pron. *soèssante, soèssantieme ôsserre, ôssonne, Usselle, Flesselle, Brusselle, Saing-Maïssang.*

4. The *x* is mute in *six*, and *dix*, when they come alone, or before nouns substantive, beginning with a consonant; as, *six garçons, six boys; dix chevaux*, ten horses, &c. Pron. *si garsong, di-chevô*: but it sounds like *z* before words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and always in their compounds; as, *six écus*, six crowns; *dix hommes*, ten men; *sixieme, sixth; sixain*, a sixth; *dixieme, tenth; dixaine*, a tenth; *dixsept*, seventeen; *dixhuit*, eighteen; *dixneuf*, nineteen; and also in *deuxieme, second.* Pron. *fizécu, dizôme, fizieme, fizain, dzieme, diz-sèt, diz-huit, diz-neuf, deuzieme.*

4. It sounds *z* in the plural of nouns before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and joins with the vowel; as, *beaux arts, fine arts; maux insupportables, insufferable woes; travaux insurmontables, insurmountable*

able toils, &c. Pron. *bô-zar, mô-zèinsuportable, travo-zèinsurmontable.*

6. It is mute, whether before a vowel or consonant, in *chaux*, lime; *choux*, cabbage; *crucifix*, crucifix; *gueux*, beggar; *porte-faix*, a street-porter; *poux*, lice; *falsifix*, falsifix; *toux*, cough; and some others.

Xaintes, Xaintonge, Xaintongeois, and Lexive, ought, and by the best writers, are now written, *Saintes, Saintonge, Saintongeois, Lessive.*

Z.

1. Z Is sounded at the beginning, and in the middle of words; as, *zénit, zést, zelot, douzieme, onze, onzieme.*

2. It is never pronounced in *dez*, dice; *nez*, nose; *chez*, by, with; *assez*, enough. Pron. *dé, né, sbé, assé.*
Le nez est assez illuminé.

P A R T I.

C H A P. II.

Of Elision, Insertion, Transposition, and Change.

A R T I C L E I.

of ELISION.

ELISION is the lopping off of a vowel at the end of a word, before another, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; and to mark this, we put a comma thus (') over the space where the vowel so lopped off should have been, and then it is called apostrophe.

A Is

1. A is lopped off, In the article and conjunctive pronoun *la*; as, *l'ame*, the soul; *l'église*, the church; *je l'aime*, I love her; *nous l'honorons*, we honour her, &c.

EXCEPTION. When the conjunctive pronoun *la* comes after the imperative mood *a* must not be lopped off; as, *faites la entrer*, make her enter; *donnez-la à manger*, give her something to eat, &c. Nor in in *là* the adverb of place; as, *êtes vous là étranger?* stranger are you there?

2. In the pronoun possessive absolute *ma*, before *amie*, and *amour*; as, *m'amie*, my friend; *m'amour*, my love.

E Fem. is lopped off before a vowel or *h* mute,

1. In *ce, de, je, le, me, ne, se, te, que, jusque, parceque*, and in *quelque* before *un* and *une*; as, *c'étoit lui*, it was he; *il s'est tué parcequ'il n'avoit point d'argent*, he shot himself because he had no money; *j'ai lu votre livre*, I have read your book; *il m'aime*, he loves me; *je t'entens*, I understand thee; *je l'estime*, I esteem him; *elle s'humilie*, she humbles herself; *jusqu'à tantôt*, till afterwards; *quelqu'un l'a dit*, some body said so, &c. But if *je* comes after its verb, the *e* must not be lopped off; as, *ai-je affaire de vous*, have I any business with you, &c. Also write and say *le onze, le onzième*.

2. Always in the feminine adjective *demie*, before its substantive; as, *demi-douzaine*, half a dozen; *demi-heure*, half an hour, &c. and not *demie-douzaine, demie-heure*.

3. In *grande* in the following ways of speaking, *à grand' peine*, with much difficulty; *grand' peur*, great fear; *grand' pitié*, great pity; *la grand' chambre*, the large chamber; *la grand' salle*, the large hall; *grand' chère*, good cheer, &c. but if you add *très, fort, une*, or *la plus* before *grande*, the *e* must not be lopped off, except in *grand' mère*, grand-mother; where it is always so.

4. In

4. In *contre* and *entre* in composition; as, *contr'opposer*, to counter-*oppose*; *s'entraimer*, to love one another, &c.

*** *Note*, That although *e* feminine, at the end of words be lost in pronunciation, before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; yet it ought sometimes to be written; as in *elle est grande*, she is tall; *une arme à feu*, a fire-arm; *un livre utile*, a useful book, &c. Pron. *ell est grande*; *un' arm' à feu*; *un livr' utile*.

When the conjunction *si*, if; comes before the personal pronouns *il*, or *ils*, *i* is lopped off; as, *s'il vient*, if he comes; *s'ils disent*, if they say, &c.

ARTICLE II.

OF INSERTION.

1. **W**HEN the third person singular of a verb ends by *a*, or *e*, a *t* is inserted between two small strokes called hyphens, or marks of continuation; thus *-t-* to soften the pronunciation; as, *parla-t-il hier à lui?* did he speak yesterday to him? *Viendra-t-elle aujourd'hui?* will she come to-day? *Que mange-t-il?* what does he eat?

2. When the verb is in the second person singular of the imperative, an *s* is inserted at the end of the verb before *y* and *en*; as, *vas-y*, go there; *viens-y*, come hither; *parles-en*, speak of it; *prends-en*, take some of it, &c.

3. A hyphen is commonly put between the compound parts of a word; as, *long-tems*, long-time; *arc-en-ciel*, rain-bow; *avant-coureur*, a fore-runner; *porte-manteau*, a cloak-bearer, &c.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE III.

Of TRANSPOSITION.

1. **I**N asking a question, the nominative is put after its verb, and a hyphen ought to be placed between the two, to mark this transposition; as, *vient-il?* does he come? *court-elle?* does she run? *fait-on?* do they?

2. Though no question be asked, the personal pronouns are put after their verbs, when they are preceded by any of the following words, viz. *aussi, peut-être, du moins, au moins, en vain, à peine, &c.* as, *aussi, reçut-il la recompence, qu'il méritoit*, likewise, he received the reward which he deserved; *peut-être, serez-vous plus sage*, perhaps you will be more wise; *du moins aurai-je de quoi vivre*, at least I will have whereon to live; *en vain voudrions nous nous plaindre*, in vain would we complain; *à peine étoient-elles en marche*, scarcely were they on their march, &c.

ARTICLE IV.

Of CHANGE.

WHEN the first person singular of a verb ends by an *e* feminine, in asking a question, the *e* feminine becomes masculine, and takes the acute accent over it; as, *marché-je droit?* do I walk straight? *parlé-je bien?* do I speak well? *mangé-je trop?* do I eat too much? but custom will not always admit the pronoun *je* after many of the first persons ended by an *e* feminine, even in changing the *e* feminine into an *é* masculine, nor yet after many other verbs differently terminated; be-
cause

cause the pronounciation would be harsh and disagreeable. So you must not say *extravagué-je*? do I talk foolishly? *cours-je*? do I run? *perds-je*? do I lose? *mens-je*? do I lie? *dors-je*? do I sleep? *sors-je*? do I go out? &c. nor as some would have them, *courai-je*? *perdai-je*? *mentai-je*? *dormai-je*? *sortai-je*? but you must have recourse to some other expression, such as, *est-ce que*, or *croyez-vous que j'extravague*? is it, or do you think that I talk foolishly? *est-ce que je cours*? *est-ce que je perds*, &c.

* * The above rule takes place as often as you must put *je* after the verb without interrogation; as, *dusse-je mourir*, ought I to die, &c. and not *dusse-je mourir*.

PART I.

CHAP. III.

OF ACCENTS.

ACCENTS are certain marks put over vowels, to make them be pronounced with a strong, or weak tone, and to denote the different inflexions of the voice.

The accents are, The *acute* marked thus (´). The *grave* thus (`). The *circumflex* thus (^). To which add the *two points*, or *diæresis* thus (¨).

1. The *acute* which is put over *é* hard, whether at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of words; as, *état*, state; *témérité*, rashness; *vérité*, truth; *amitiés*, friendships; *traités*, &c. treaties.

Note. 1. When *e* is followed by *z* at the end of a word, it is always hard; but it is not accented, because the property of *z* is to render it hard; as, *nez*, *assez*, *vous avez*, you have; *vous parlerez*, you will speak, &c.

2. In

2. In the termination *er* of the infinitives of verbs of the first conjugation *e* though hard, requires no accent; as, *donner*, to give; *manger*, to eat; *parler*, to speak, &c.

II. The *grave* is put over *e* very open followed by *s* at the end of words; as, *procès*, law-suit; *après*, after; *auprès*, near; *dès*, from; *progrès*, progress; *accès*, access, &c.

It is also put over *à* the article, to distinguish it from *a* the verb; over *à* the adverb, to distinguish it from *la* the article, or conjunctive pronoun; over *où* the adverb, to distinguish it from *ou* the conjunction, &c.

III. The *circumflex* is, and ought only to be put over long vowels in the middle or at the end of words; as, *empêchement*, hindrance; *entêtement*, infatuation; *dépôt*, deposite; *aussi-tôt*, as soon.

As the *diæresis*, or two points, makes also a kind of accent, we shall here allow it a place.

1. It is put over a vowel to separate it from the one that immediately precedes it; as, *hâir*, to hate; *naïveté*, simplicity, &c.

2. It ought only to be put over a vowel when it is to have, with the preceding one, two different pronunciations; and then the *diæresis* prevents an equivocal meaning. So in *Saül*, Saul; *Pirithoüs*, Pirithous; *Moïse*, Moses; *aiguë*, sharp; *ambiguë*, ambiguous, &c. you must put it over the *u*, *i*, and *e*, that they may not be pronounced *Sól*, *Piritoos*, *Moëse*, *aigue*, *ambigue*.

3. Those who write *avoüer*, *jouir*, *proüe*, *avenüe*, *rüe*, *vüe*, &c. do not make a right use of the *diæresis*; because they either put it over a vowel that is in the same syllable with the preceding one, as in *avoüer*, *jouir*, &c. or over one, which without it, would always be pronounced in the same manner, as in *avenüe*, *rüe*, *vüe*.

4. By putting the *acute* accent over the *e* which precedes a vowel, it is needless to put the *diæresis* over the one that follows it, in order to separate it from the *e*; because the acute accent making the *e* to be pronounced hard

hard and clear, it cannot be confounded with the one that follows. So in *geolier*, jaylor; the *e* and *o* make but one syllable. (Pron. *jolier*) but in *géant*, a giant; *géométrie*, geometry; *géographe*, geographer; *obéissant*, obedient; *réitérer*, to repeat; *réussir*, to succeed, &c. the acute accent gives the *e* a distinct and separate pronunciation from that of the following vowel.

5. It is also a kind of abuse to put the *diæresis* over the *i* to give it the sound of double *ii*; as in *pays*, country; *envoyer*, to send; *moyen*, mean, &c. it is much better to use the *y* and to write *pays*, *envoyer*, *moyen*.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

On the ACCENTS.

1. **T**HE open *e* is found either at the beginning of a syllable, and followed by a consonant, as in *esprit*, spirit, wit; or in the middle of it, between two consonants, as in *per-mis*, permitted; or at the end of a syllable, preceded by a consonant, or a vowel, as in *modèle*, a model; *lumière*, light, understanding.

In the two first circumstances, the *e* must be open, on account of the following consonant, with which it is so connected, that it would be almost impossible to pronounce it otherways; consequently it has no need of the grave accent.

2. The way of pronouncing *e* at the beginning, or in the middle of a syllable, is so dependant on the following consonant, that it is more, or less open, in proportion, as the consonant requires a more, or less opening of the mouth: so in *imperceptible*, imperceptible; *per* is more open than *cep*.

3. There are some words wherein *e* is mute, though followed by two consonants; as, *appeller*, to call; *res-*
sentir,

sentir, to feel; *se ressouvenir*, to remember, &c. but then the two consonants ought only to be regarded as one, and as having no affinity with the *e* that precedes them, *appe-lér*, *re-sentir*, *se re-souvenir*.

What has just now been said, ought also to be applied to the *e* that is found in the last syllable of a word, when it is joined in the pronunciation with the following consonant; as at the end of the words *avec*, with; *relief*, relief; *éternel*, eternal; *hiver*, winter; *sujet*, subject, &c. and if it is not open in *bled*, *clef*, *aimer*, *Olivier*, *hammes*, &c. it is, because it borrows nothing of the sound of the consonant by which it is followed.

4. In *aimer*, to love; and all the infinitives of the first conjugation, the *e* hard becomes a little open, when the infinitive is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, because then the *r* being pronounced, naturally changes the sound of the *e* that precedes it. So *e* is hard in *aimer la lecture*, to love reading; and it is a little open in *aimer à lire*, to love to read.

5. In words of one syllable, *e* followed by *s* is always open, but takes no accent, as, *ces*, *des*, *les*, *mes*, *ses*, *tes*. The grave accent is put over *dès*, *près*, *très*, adverbs, or prepositions, because *e* is more open in them, than in the preceding monosyllables.

6. When *e* is at the end of a syllable, preceded by a consonant, or vowel; it may be laid down as a general rule, that it is always open, when the syllable which it terminates, is the last but one of a word, and when the last ends with an *e* mute, whether the mute *e* be followed by an *s*, as in the plural of nouns, or by *nt*, as in the plural of verbs. So you must pronounce the *e* open in the last syllable but one of the words *espece*, species; *siecle*, age; *remedes*, remedies; *regles*, rules; *collegues*, colleagues; *parallele*, paralel; *phénomene*, phenomenon; *caractere*, character; *carriere*, quarry, career; *planetes*, planets; *élève*, disciple; *ils possèdent*, they possess; *ils chancelent*, they reel; *ils considèrent*, they consider; *ils interprètent*,

interpretent, they interpret; *ils élevent*, they bring up, &c.

If this general rule hath exceptions, it can only be in some words in *ege*; as, *collège*, *piège*, *siège*, &c. where in the penult *e* is commonly pronounced like a long *é* hard, as that pronunciation naturally enough agrees with the sound of *g*.

As the mute final *e* has only a dull cadence, and makes us lower, and in some manner, to precipitate the tone of the voice, it is natural that it should rise, and support itself more on the preceding syllable, in order to gain on the one, what it hath lost on the other. Now the voice can hardly support itself on *e*, without giving it an open sound; so of necessity, the *e* becomes open in the penult syllables of words ending by an *e* mute. It would even be difficult to pronounce it otherways, and the hard or the mute *e*, would generally render a disagreeable and strained sound.

This pronunciation of the *e* open is so natural to the French language, that the *e* mute in the penult syllable of several verbs, becomes open, when the last takes an *e* mute. So you must pronounce *jeter*, to throw; *acheter*, to buy; *mener*, to carry, to lead; *appeller*, to call; with an *e* mute; but you must pronounce with an *e* open *je jette*, I throw; *j'achete*, I buy; *je mene*, I lead; *j'appelle*, I call.

7. In general the *e* that ends other syllables than the penult, or that terminates it, in the words of which the last does not end by an *e* mute, is hard, or mute; and always takes the acute accent, if it is hard, to distinguish it from the mute *e*; as, *répondre*, to answer; *depuis*, since; *défaut*, fault; *retenir*, to keep; *méconnoître*, to miske; *reconnoître*, to acknowledge; *répétition*, repetition; *séjour*, abode; *mouvement*, motion; *séparément*, separately, &c.

8. *E* Of the syllable *de* at the beginning of a word is almost always hard, and the general rule that may be followed with safety, for the pronunciation of this syllable

is, that when it gives the word, at the beginning of which it is found, a privative signification, or contrary to the one it would have, if it was taken from it, it is unexceptionably hard; as, *désarmer*, to disarm; *désapprendre*, to unlearn, to forget; *désfaire*, to undo; *débrider*, to unbridle; *décharger*, to discharge; *désbonorer*, to dishonour, &c. the contrary of *armer*, *apprendre*, *faire*, *brider*, *charger*, *honorer*, &c.

It is not so with *decret*, *décret*; *demeure*, dwelling; *desire*, desire; *depuis*, since: and some others wherein *de* is pronounced with *e* mute, because they have no privative signification with respect to other words.

It must not however be infered from this, that all the words wherein *de* is pronounced with *e* hard, mark privation, or contrariety: but it is always certain, that so often as it does, it ought to be hard.

8. It may also be laid down as a general rule with regard to the syllable *re*; that *e* is commonly mute, when *re* is the first syllable of a word, expressing the reiteration, or repetition of an action; as in *redire*, *refaire*, *recommencer*, *représenter*, &c. and for this reason *e* in *re* is mute though followed by *ss* in *ressemblance*, *ressemblant*, *ressembler*, *ressentiment*, *ressentir*, *resserrement*, *resserrer*, *ressort*, *ressortir*, *ressource*, *ressouvenance*, *ressouvenir*, *ressuer*; except *réssusciter*, wherein *e* is hard.

* * There are however two occasions, wherein the syllable *re*, though a reduplicative preposition is pronounced with *e* hard and accented.

1. When it is added to a word beginning with an *e* hard, or with another vowel, as in *échauffer*, *réchauffer*, *écrier*, *récrier*; *écrire*, *récrire*; *édifier*, *réédifier*; *équiper*, *rééquiper*; *échafauder*, *rééchafauder*; *échapper*, *réchapper*; *élargir*, *rélargir*; *émoudre*, *rémoudre*; *essuyer*, *ressuyer*; *établir*, *rétablir*; *étendre*, *réétendre*; *étudier*, *réétudier*; *aggraver*, *réaggraver*; *assigner*, *réassigner*; *habituer*, *réhabituer*; *intégration*, *réintégration*; *unir*, *réunir*. *Re* is pronounced with *e* mute in *rehausser*, from *hausser*; because *h* is pronounced.

2. When

2. When the preposition *re* marks redouplication, without our being able to say, that it is added to a word; that is to say, when the reduplicative word wherein it is found, is not a *French* word, or would have a different signification, if it was taken from it. So we say *récidive* and *récidiver*, with *é* hard; because *cidive* and *cidiver* are not *French* words: and also in *récoler* and *récolement*; *récriminer* and *récrimination*; *rédimer*, *reduplicatif*, and *reduplication*; *réfléchir*, *réfraction*; *régénérer* and *régénération*; *réhabiliter* and *réhabilitation*; *réingrér*, *réitérer*, and *réitérateon*; *réparer* and *réparation*; *répercuter* and *répercussion*; *répéter*, *répétiteur* and *répétition*; *résipiscence*, *résumer*, *résurrection*, *réverbération*. Except *réconfronter*, *réformer* and their compounds, wherein *e* of *re* is hard, altho' we say in the same sense *confronter* and *reformer*.

9. There is still an oddity with regard to the syllable *re*, that custom hath introduced contrary to all rule. It is pronounced with *é* hard in *réception*, although coming from *recevoir* wherein *e* is mute: it is hard in *réfugier*, and mute in *refuge*: it is hard in *relégation*, and mute in *reléguer*: we say *rémission* although coming from *remetre*; *rétenition* although from *retenir*; *irreligion* and *irreligieux* although from *religion* and *religieux*, &c.

10. A word has often a very different meaning, when *re* is pronounced with *é* hard, or *e* mute; which can only be distinguished in writing by putting, or not putting the acute accent. *Répartir*, with the acute accent signifies to distribute or subdivide; and *repartir* with the *e* mute signifies to answer, or set out a second time; *répondre*, signifies to answer; and *repondre* signifies to lay eggs again: *réten dre*, signifies to spread out a new, and *retendre* to tend again.

* * These observations on the single syllables *de* and *re* sufficiently show that it is hardly possible to give sure, general and unexceptionable rules for the position of the acute accent over the *e* without entering into a long detail of exceptions and irregularities.

The *circumflex accent* must not be put over all the long vowels, as custom would not admit of it. Thus in *grace*, favour; *chapitre*, chapter; *muse*, muse; the *a*, *i* and *u* are long though they do not take the *circumflex*.

When *e* is long it is almost always very open, as you may see in *entêtement*, *empêchement*, *problème*, &c. but it is not long, nor does it take the *circumflex* in the middle of words, but when it is at the end of a syllable, and when it is not the following consonant that makes it to be pronounced very open. Thus it does not take the *circumflex* in *vertu*, *permis*, *guerrier*, &c. because it is not long though very open.

Many think that the *circumflex accent* is simply put to mark the suppression of some letter, and that it is only used for example in *honnête*, because they formerly wrote *honneſte*; and on this principle they still write with the *circumflex* *apperçu*, *conû*, *vû*, *pû*, &c. because in old orthography they wrote *apperceu*, *conneu*, *veu*, *peu*, &c.

It is true that in *honnête*, and some others, the *circumflex* is put instead of *s*; but that is only in long syllables, and where the letter *s* only serves to protract the sound of the vowel. With regard to other words, from which the new orthography has retrenched some letters, it seems needless to replace them by the *circumflex*, as it would be avoiding one inconvenience by another: it is however proper to retain this accent in certain words to prevent any ambiguity, as in *dû* participle of the verb *devoir*, to distinguish it from *du* the article; in *crû*, participle of *croître*, to distinguish it from *cru* participle of *croire*; in *sur* the adjective, to distinguish it from *sur* the preposition, &c. as to what further concerns it, its use ought to be only to mark long vowels and syllables.

It is hardly possible to give general and infallible rules to determine which are the long syllables whereon the *circumflex* ought to be put. They will be known best by the following detail.

FINAL

FINAL SYLLABLES.

<i>ât</i> ; as, <i>appât</i> .	}	<i>ôît</i> ; as, <i>il paroît</i> , <i>il croît</i> from <i>croître</i> .
<i>ait</i> ; as, <i>il plait</i> .		
<i>êt</i> ; as, <i>acquêt</i> .		<i>ouît</i> ; as, <i>goût</i> .
<i>ît</i> ; as, <i>gît</i> .		<i>ût</i> ; as, <i>affût</i> .
<i>ôt</i> ; as, <i>impôt</i> .		

All the syllables which end the third persons singular of the imperfect of the subjunctive of verbs; as, *qu'il aimât*, *qu'il rendît*, *qu'il reçût*, *qu'il retînt*.

PENULT SYLLABLES.

<i>âche</i> ; as, <i>relâche</i> .	}	<i>ête</i> ; as, <i>tempête</i> .
<i>âge</i> ; as, <i>âge</i> .		<i>être</i> ; as, <i>salpêtre</i> .
<i>âte</i> ; as, <i>faîte</i> , the top.		<i>îte</i> ; as, <i>gîte</i> .
<i>âle</i> ; as, <i>pâle</i> .		<i>ôître</i> ; as, <i>croître</i> , <i>parôître</i> .
<i>aitre</i> ; as, <i>maître</i> .		<i>tre</i> .
<i>âne</i> ; as, <i>âne</i> , an ass, <i>crâne</i> .		<i>ôle</i> ; as, <i>contrôle</i> , except <i>il vole</i> , he steals.
<i>âpre</i> ; as, <i>capre</i> .		<i>ôme</i> ; as, <i>dôme</i> , <i>fantôme</i> .
<i>âte</i> ; as, <i>pâte</i> .		<i>ône</i> ; as, <i>aumône</i> .
<i>âtre</i> ; as, <i>plâtre</i> .		<i>ôte</i> ; as, <i>côte</i> .
<i>êche</i> ; as, <i>bêche</i> .		<i>ôtre</i> ; as, <i>apôtre</i> .
<i>êle</i> ; as, <i>grêle</i> , except <i>zele</i> .		<i>oute</i> ; as, <i>croûte</i> , except <i>absolûte</i> ,
<i>ême</i> ; as, <i>diadême</i> .		<i>ûte</i> ; as, <i>chûte</i> .
<i>êne</i> ; as, <i>chêne</i> .		
<i>êpe</i> ; as, <i>guêpe</i> .		

All the penult syllables of the first and second persons plural of the preter definites of verbs; as, *nous aimâmes*, *vous aimâtes*; *nous rendîmes*, *vous rendîtes*; *nous reçûmes*, *vous reçûtes*; *nous retînmes*, *vous retîntes*.

All the words which end as the above, and of which the final, or penult syllables are long, take the circumflex over them, and it is also retained in their compounds;

as, bât, bâter; arrêt, arrêter; lâche, lâcheté; tête, entêter, entêtement, &c.

There are many words which cannot be reduced to common terminations, which both they, their compounds, and derivatives are written with the circumflex, viz. accôûtrer, aîné, bâfrer, baïller, bâtard, bâter, bâtir, bâton, béler, belître, blâme, brûler, bûche, chaîne, châsse de reliques, châtaigne, château, châtier, clôtûre, côte, coûter, dîme, dîner, embûche, empêcher, empêtrer, enchevêtrer, endêver, engrêlé, épître, évêché, évêque, fâcher, fâcheux, fêler, flâtrer, fraîcheur, frôler, fûté, gâcheux, gâteau, gâter, gêne, grêve, hôtel, hôpital, huître, jeûne, fasting, île, mâcher, mâter, matin, a dog, mêler, mûr, ripe, mûrir, to grow ripe, ôter, pâcage, pâmer, pâque, pâtis, pâtuier, pétrir, poêle, prêter, puîné, râteau, reître, rêve, tater, traîner, véler, vèpres, vêtir.

PART I.

CHAP. IV.

Of the PARTS of SPEECH, in general.

PARTS of speech, are words differing in kind one from another, and are so called; because by entering into the composition of speech, they become parts of it.

The parts of speech are nine in number: viz. *Article, noun, pronoun, verb, participle, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.*

Before we enter into a detail of these parts of speech in particular, it is necessary to know in general, what is meant by gender, number and case, as they belong to articles, nouns, pronouns and participles.

Of

Of GENDER.

Gender is the way of distinguishing by expression one sex from another, or in general, the *male* from the *female*, and are two: *viz.* The *masculine* which marks the male, and the *feminine*, which marks the female.

Their signs are *le*, or *un* for the masculine; *la*, or *une* for the feminine; as, *le pere*, the father; or *un pere*, a father; *la mere*, the mother; or *une mere*, a mother.

There are also a great many words which neither express male; nor female, before which you must put *le*, or *un*, *la*, or *une*, and for that reason are called masculine or feminine, although they signify nothing that has any relation to the one, or other sex. Thus *livre*, book; or *table*, table; cannot be of any of the two sexes, yet we say *le livre*, the book; *la table*, the table; as we say *le pere* and *la mere*.

Of NUMBER.

Number expresses the unity, or plurality in things, and consequently is either singular or plural.

The *singular number* speaks only of one single person, or thing; as, *le mari*, the husband; *la maison*, the house; *un homme*, a man; *la rue*, the street, &c.

The *plural* speaks of two, or more persons or things; as, *les maris*, the husbands; *les maisons*, the houses; *les hommes*, the men; *des rues*, streets.

Of CASE.

The *case* expresses the different relations which persons, or things may have with one another; or it points out the different senses the same noun, or pronoun may be taken in. The cases are six in number *viz.* The *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative* and *ablative*.

1. The *nominative* is so called; because it expresses a thing as only named, or it serves as the subject of a proposition; as, when I say, *le ciel*, heaven; *la terre*, earth; *la mer*, the sea; I only name the things which they signify; and when I say *le ciel est serain*, heaven, or the sky is serain; *la terre est féconde*, the earth is fruitful; *la mer est agitée*, the sea is troubled; I express these things as subjects each of a proposition, and the nouns *ciel*, *terre*, *mer* are in the nominative in both circumstances; and consequently cannot be governed either by a verb or preposition.

It is also called *nominative* because it serves to name things in a direct manner, and moreover it governs directly the whole construction of a discourse. On the contrary the other cases are called *oblique* or *indirect*; because they are only used after other words, by which they are governed.

2. The *genitive* signifies to *beget* or *produce*; because it expresses the relation of a thing as belonging to another, in whatever manner that be, or it expresses the *possessor* or *cause* of an action.

3. The *dative*, signifies to *give*, and marks a relation of *attribution*; that is to say, it serves to mark the person, or thing to whom any thing is given, or to whom it is addressed.

4. The *accusative* signifies to *accuse*, and by it we express the end, or relation of an action, and it is either governed by an active verb or by some preposition.

5. The *vocative*, signifies to *call*; because, by it we name the person to whom we speak, or the thing to which we address ourselves, as if it was a person. It is commonly expressed by the noun without an article, or sometimes by the noun preceded by the letter *ô*.

6. The *ablative*, which is like the *genitive* by expression, but not by meaning, signifies to *take away*; because by it, in nouns, we express a relation of *separation*, *division*, or *privation*.

P A R T I.

C H A P. V.

Of ARTICLES.

ARTICLES are particles put before nouns, &c. to show their gender, number and case.

The articles are four in number, viz. The *definite*, *indefinite*, *partitive*, or *indeterminate*, and *un*, *une*.

A R T I C L E I.

Of the DEFINITE ARTICLES.

The *definite articles* are so called; because they serve to point out an object, or objects, in a particular and determinate manner. *They are,*

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1. <i>Le</i> , the; which marks the nominative or accusative, for the masculine gender. | } Singular. |
| <i>La</i> , the; which marks the nominative, or accusative, for the feminine gender. | |
| <i>Les</i> , the; which marks the nominative, or accusative, for both genders. | } Plural. |
| 2. <i>Du</i> , of, by, or from; which marks the genitive, or ablative, for the masculine gender. | |
| <i>De la</i> , of, by, or from; which marks the genitive, or ablative, for the feminine gender. | } Singular. |
| | |

Des,

58 Of the DEFINITE ARTICLES.

- Des*, of, by, or from; which marks the ge-
 nitive, or ablative, for both genders. } *Plural.*
3. *Au*, to, to the; which marks the dative
 for the masculine gender. } *Singular.*
- A la*, to, to the; which marks the dative for
 the feminine gender. }
- Aux*, to, to the; which marks the dative for
 both genders. } *Plural.*

R E M A R K S.

1. **W**HEN the article *le* or *la*, comes before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, *e* and *a* are lopped off, and the apostrophe put in their stead. Thus instead of saying *le oiseau*, *le espérance*, *le homme*, *le humeur*, &c. we say, *l'oiseau*, the bird; *l'espérance*, hope; *l'homme*, the man; *l'humeur*, the humour, &c.
2. Formerly the articles *le*, *la*, *les*; were always put before nouns, whatever case was to be expressed; and *de* was only added to mark the genitive or ablative; and *à* the dative in the singular. In like manner to express these cases, for both genders in the plural *de les*, *à les*, were put; and they said *le prince*, *de le prince*, *à le prince*, in the singular; and *les princes*, *de les princes*, *à les princes*; *les tables*, *de les tables*, *à les tables*: but through succession of time these old articles have been changed into *du*, *au*, in the singular; and *des*, *aux*, in the plural.
3. A remains of this old custom is still to be seen in the singular of nouns masculine, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; for we say, *l'amour*, *de l'amour*, *à l'amour*; *l'honneur*, *de l'honneur*, *à l'honneur*; and only retrench the *e* of the article *le*.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE II.

Of the INDEFINITE ARTICLES.

THE *indefinite articles* are so called ; because they are either only put before nouns, which have a vague and indeterminate meaning, or before nouns, which of themselves mark a distinction, so exact and precise, that they have no need of the definite article to point it out. They are,

<i>De, of, by, or from ;</i>	which marks the ge-	} <i>Of both genders and num- bers.</i>
<i>nitive, or ablative, and,</i>		
<i>A, to, to the ;</i>	which marks the da-	}
<i>tive.</i>		

* * With these two articles are declined all the proper names of God, angels, men, cities, &c. Indefinite nouns take no articles before them in the nominative, or accusative cases.

ARTICLE III.

Of the PARTITIVE, or INDETERMINATE ARTICLES.

THE *partitive particles* are so called ; because they only serve to point out a part of the subjects in a discourse, and are called indeterminate, as that part which they point out is always vague and indeterminate.

The partitive articles are of two kinds, *viz.*

Those formed of the genitive, of the definite ; and those made of the genitive of the indefinite articles.

1. Those

60. Of the PARTITIVE ARTICLES.

1. Those formed of the genitive of the definite are,

Du, de la, some; which mark the nominative, or accusative, for the masculine or feminine genders, in nouns beginning with a consonant. } Singular.

De l', de la, some; which mark the nominative, or accusative, for the masculine or feminine genders, in nouns beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute. } Singular.

Des, some; which marks the nominative, or accusative, for all nouns, whether masculine or feminine, however they begin. } Plural.

* * * The genitive, or ablative of these articles ought to be formed by adding *de*: but as, *de du, de de la, de de l', de des*, would produce a harsh and disagreeable pronunciation; one of them is always retrenched, and *de* is only retained, from which *e* is lopped off before nouns beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute.

A, to; which marks the dative, by being added to the article of the nominative, without any contraction, for both genders and numbers.

2. Those made of the indefinite are,

De, some; which marks the nominative, or accusative; of which *e* is retrenched before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; and is used when the adjective precedes the substantive: whereas these formed of the definite, are put only before nouns, which either have no adjective, or which take it after them.

* * * The genitive, or ablative, ought to be made by adding *de* to the nominative article: but as *de de* would render the pronunciation too harsh, one of these articles is always omitted.

A, to; which marks the dative, by being added to the article of the nominative; without any contraction, for both genders and numbers.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE IV.

of UN, UNE.

UN, and its feminine *une*, is an article, when it expresses only a vague and indeterminate unity. It takes *de* to form its genitive, or ablative, from which *e* is retrenched; and *à* to form its dative.

Its plural is the same with that of the partitive articles.

* * * The articles shall be treated of at more length when we come to syntax.

CHAP. VI.

of N O U N S.

THE *noun* serves to express the subject, or subjects of which we speak; or it is the object of an idea, by which we mean every thing that can occasion or excite the operations of the soul, and that can make any impression on the senses.

So, *to know*, *to love*, *to hate*, &c. are operations of the soul, and the things to which these tend, are their objects; as when I know the truth, *truth* is the object of my knowledge; when I love virtue and hate vice, *virtue* and *vice* are the objects of my love and hatred.

Our senses are five, *viz.* *seeing*, *hearing*, *tasting*, *smelling* and *touching*; and whatever can act upon any of these is its object. So, *light* and *colours* are the objects of seeing; *sounds* are those of hearing; every thing that we *eat* and *drink*, is that of taste; *flowers*, *aromatics*, *perfumes*, and other *odours*, are those of

62 *Of the NOUN SUBSTANTIVE.*

of smelling; and such things as are *soft, hard or liquid*, are those of touching. Of consequence every thing that we can conceive or represent to ourselves by a single view, without forming any judgement about it, is expressed in discourse by a noun.

There are two kinds of nouns, *viz.*

The noun substantive, and the noun adjective.

ARTICLE I.

Of the NOUN SUBSTANTIVE.

THE *noun substantive* considered simply in itself, expresses a determinate object, without giving any attention to its qualities; or in other words, it points out a thing as subsisting of itself, and has no need of being joined to another noun, to make us understand it.

So, *ciel, terre, arbre*, are nouns substantive; because they point out things as subsisting of themselves, and which make us clearly to know the objects, and my ideas when I pronounce them, without being obliged to add any other nouns to them.

The nouns substantive are of three kinds, *viz.* The *common or appellative*, the *collective* and *proper names*.

1. The *common or appellative*, are so called; because they express ideas that may agree to several things of of the same kind, as the words *ange, homme, cheval*, may agree to all the angels, men, and horses in general.

2. The *collective* are so called; because, although singular, they necessarily convey into the mind the idea of several persons, or things, of the same kind as assembled together. Thus *forêt*, a forest; makes us form the idea of many trees; *peuple*, people; that of many men:
and

and *armée*, army; that of many soldiers: and so with regard to *multitude*, *infinité*, *nombre*, *quantité*, *troupe*, *la plupart*, &c.

3. *Proper names* which are so called; because they only afford *ideas*, which represent to us, a thing as alone, or only of its kind; as, *César*, *Caton*, *Paris*, *Rome*, *Angleterre*, &c.

Of the DECLENSION of NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

To *decline a noun* is to vary it, by the help of articles, through all its genders, numbers and cases, according to its circumstances.

DECLENSION of NOUNS,

With the DEFINITIVE ARTICLE.

1. Of the masculine gender beginning with a consonant.

Singular.

Nom. or Acc. *le prince*,
the prince.

Gen. or Abl. *du prince*,
of, or by the prince.

Dat. *au prince*, to the
prince.

Voc. *ô prince*, O prince.

Plural.

Nom. or Acc. *les princes*,
the princes.

Gen. or Abl. *des princes*.
of, or by princes.

Dat. *aux princes*, to prin-
ces.

Voc. *ô princes*, O princes.

2. Of

2. Of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>la table</i> , the table.	Nom. or Acc. <i>les tables</i> , the tables.
Gen. or Abl. <i>de la table</i> , of, or by the table.	Gen. or Abl. <i>des tables</i> , of, or by the tables.
Dat. <i>à la table</i> , to the ta- ble.	Dat. <i>aux tables</i> , to the tables.
Voc. <i>ô table</i> , O table.	Voc. <i>ô tables</i> , O tables.

3. Of the masculine gender, beginning with a vowel.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>l' amour</i> , love.	Nom. or Acc. <i>les amours</i> , loves.
Gen. or Abl. <i>de l' amour</i> , of, or by love.	Gen. or Abl. <i>des amours</i> , of, or by loves.
Dat. <i>à l' amour</i> , to love.	Dat. <i>aux amours</i> , to loves.
Voc. <i>ô amour</i> , O love.	Voc. <i>ô amours</i> , O loves.

4. Of the feminine gender, beginning with a vowel.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>l' ame</i> , the soul.	Nom. or Acc. <i>les ames</i> , the souls.
Gen. or Abl. <i>de l' ame</i> , of, or by the soul.	Gen. or Abl. <i>des ames</i> , of, or by souls.
Dat. <i>à l' ame</i> , to the soul.	Dat. <i>aux ames</i> , to souls.
Voc. <i>ô ame</i> , O soul.	Voc. <i>ô ames</i> , O souls.

5. Of

3. Of the masculine gender, beginning with an *h* mute.

Singular.

Nom. or Acc. *P honneur*,
honour.

Gen. or Abl. *de l'honneur*,
of, or by honour.

Dat. *à l'honneur*, to ho-
nour.

Voc. *ô honneur*, O ho-
nour.

Plural.

Nom. or Acc. *les hon-
neurs*, honours.

Gen. or Abl. *des honneurs*,
of, or by honours.

Dat. *aux honneurs*, to
honours.

Voc. *ô honneurs*, O ho-
nours.

* * Nouns of the feminine gender beginning with an *h* mute, are declined in the same manner.

DECLENSION of NOUNS, With the INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. Of the masculine and feminine genders beginning with a consonant.

Masculine.

Nom. or Acc. *Dieu*, God.

Gen. or Abl. *de Dieu*, of,
or by God.

Dat. *à Dieu*, to God.

Voc. *ô Dieu*, O God.

Feminine.

Nom. or Acc. *Rome*, Rome.

Gen. or Abl. *de Rome*,
of, or by Rome.

Dat. *à Rome*, to Rome.

Voc. *ô Rome*, O Rome.

2. Of the masculine and feminine genders beginning with a vowel.

Masculine.

Nom. or Acc. *Antoine*,
Anthony.

Gen. or Abl. *d' Antoine*,
of, or by Anthony.

Dat. *à Antoine*, to An-
thony.

Voc. *ô Antoine*, O An-
thony.

Feminine.

Nom. or Acc. *Angelique*,
Angelica.

Gen. or Abl. *d' Angelique*,
of, or by Angelica.

Dat. *à Angelique*, to An-
gelica.

Voc. *ô Angelique*, O An-
gelica.

3. Of

3. Of the masculine and feminine genders beginning with an *h* mute.

Nom. or Acc. <i>mas. Hercule</i> , Hercules.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>fem. Helene</i> , Helen.
Gen. or Abl. <i>d' Hercule</i> , of, or by Hercules.		Gen. or Abl. <i>d' Helene</i> , of, or by Helen.
Dat. <i>à Hercule</i> , to Hercules.		Dat. <i>à Helene</i> , to Helen.
Voc. <i>ô Hercule</i> , O Hercules.		Voc. <i>ô Helene</i> , O Helen.

*** Proper names for the most part have no plural, and if they have, they want the singular.

DECLENSION of NOUNS, With the PARTITIVE ARTICLES.

1. Of the masculine gender beginning with a consonant.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>du pain</i> , bread.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>des pains</i> , loaves.
Gen. or Abl. <i>de pain</i> , of, or by bread.		Gen. or Abl. <i>de pains</i> , of, or by loaves.
Dat. <i>à du pain</i> , to bread,		Dat. <i>à des pains</i> , to loaves.

2. Of the feminine gender beginning with a consonant.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>de la viande</i> , meat.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>des viandes</i> , meats,
Gen. or Abl. <i>de viande</i> , of, or by meat.		Gen. or Abl. <i>de viandes</i> , of, or by meats.
Dat. <i>à de la viande</i> , to meat.		Dat. <i>à des viandes</i> , to meats.

3. Of

3. Of the masculine gender beginning with a vowel.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. or Acc. <i>de l'esprit</i> , wit.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>des esprits</i> , wits.	}
Gen. or Abl. <i>d'esprit</i> , of, or by wit.		Gen. or Abl. <i>d'esprits</i> , of, or by wits.	
Dat. <i>à de l'esprit</i> , to wit.		Dat. <i>à des esprits</i> , to wits.	

4. Of the feminine gender beginning with a vowel.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. or Acc. <i>de l'eau</i> , water.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>des eaux</i> , waters.	}
Gen. or Abl. <i>d'eau</i> , of, or by water.		Gen. or Abl. <i>d'eaux</i> , of, or by waters.	
Dat. <i>à de l'eau</i> , to water.		Dat. <i>à des eaux</i> , to waters.	

5. Of the masculine gender beginning with an *h* mute.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. or Acc. <i>de l'honneur</i> , honour.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>des hon- neurs</i> , honours.	}
Gen. or Abl. <i>d'honneur</i> , of, or by honour.		Gen. or Abl. <i>d'honneurs</i> , of, or by honours.	
Dat. <i>à de l'honneur</i> , to honour.		Dat. <i>à des honneurs</i> , to honours.	

* * Those of the feminine gender are declined in the same manner.

DECLENSION of NOUNS,

With *UN* and *UNE*.

1. Of the masculine gender, beginning with a consonant.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. or Acc. <i>un roi</i> , a king.	}	Nom. or Acc. <i>des rois</i> , kings.	}
Gen. or Abl. <i>d'un roi</i> , of, or by a king.		Gen. or Abl. <i>de rois</i> , of, or by kings.	
Dat. <i>à un roi</i> , to a king.		Dat. <i>à des rois</i> , to kings.	

F 2

2. Of

2. Of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>une femme</i> , a woman.	Nom. or Acc. <i>des femmes</i> , women.
Gen. or Abl. <i>d' une fem- me</i> , of, or by a woman.	Gen. or Abl. <i>de femmes</i> , of, or by women.
Dat. <i>à une femme</i> , to a woman.	Dat. <i>à des femmes</i> , to women.

3. Of the masculine gender, beginning with an *h* mute.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or Acc. <i>un homme</i> , a man.	Nom. or Acc. <i>des hommes</i> , men.
Gen. or Abl. <i>d' un homme</i> , of, or by a man.	Gen. or Abl. <i>d' hommes</i> , of, or by men.
Dat. <i>à un homme</i> , to a man.	Dat. <i>à des hommes</i> , to men.

* * * Other nouns are declined nearly in the same way.

ARTICLE II.

Of the NOUN ADJECTIVE.

THE *noun adjective* expresses the qualities of a thing, and which we cannot clearly understand without adding a noun substantive to it: when I say, *rouge*, red; *aimable*, lovely; or *généreux*, generous; I express the qualities of things; but these words are not clearly understood, unless I add a noun substantive, and say *un habit rouge*, a red coat; *un enfant aimable*, a lovely child; *un coeur généreux*, a generous heart.

The *abstract nouns substantive* also express qualities; but then they are to be considered as subsisting of themselves, and as independent of every object that may be vested

vested with them: although, in fact, they have no real existence in nature, but only in the understanding, when they are conceived in this manner.

The difference between the *abstract noun substantive* and the *adjective* is, that the adjective expresses not only a quality, but also presents to the mind the confused idea of something that is vested with it. So when I say *rouge*, red; I may mean any thing in general that is red; and that confused idea only becomes distinct, when that quality is added to something that is clear and determinate; as when I say, *un habit rouge*, a red coat; &c. whereas the abstract noun substantive only expresses the quality in a simple manner, without presenting to the mind any other idea, and makes itself clearly understood, without being added to any other word; as when I say *la rougeur*, redness.

To distinguish the *noun substantive* from the *noun adjective*, you may observe the following general rule.

As often as you can put the word *chose*, thing; or *personne*, a person; to a noun, and that it makes sense with it, it is an adjective; but if it does not, it is a substantive. So *table*, table; *livre*, book; are nouns substantive, for we cannot say *chose table*, thing table; *chose livre*, thing book; nor *personne table*, person table; *personne livre*, person book; but *agréable* and *habile* are adjectives, for we can say *chose agréable*, an agreeable thing; *une personne habile*, a skilled, or able person.

A noun though substantive by nature becomes sometimes an adjective. Thus *colere*, wrath; *sacrilege*, sacrilege; *politique*, politic, &c. are true substantives in the following expressions, *craignons d'irriter la colere de Dieu*, let us be afraid of provoking the wrath of God; *la communion indigne est un sacrilege*, unworthy communion is a sacrilege; *la politique est rarement d'accord avec la sincérité*, politic seldom agrees with sincerity; for in these examples, the words *colere*, *sacrilege*, and *politique*, express things that subsist, and are fully clear of themselves: but in *un homme colere*, a cholerick man;

une main sacrilege, a sacrilegious hand; *une conduite politique*, a political conduct; the above words are adjectives, for they only express the qualities of the words *colere*, *main* and *conduite*.

Adjectives are sometimes used as substantives; as when I say *rien n'est beau que le vrai*, nothing is beautiful but the truth; *le faux d'un principe*, the falsity of a principle; *le sublime d'un discours*, &c. the sublimity of a discourse; that is as if I had said *que la vérité, la fausseté, la sublimité*.

Adjectives are often used in this manner, for want of abstract substantives, that could precisely signify the same thing; as when I say *le fort de la mêlée*, the heat of the scuffle; *faire son possible*, to do his utmost; it would not be the same to say *la force de la mêlée, faire sa possible*, for then they would have a different meaning.

It is also true that the most part of nouns adjective taken substantively, contain the idea of a vague and general substantive, of which they are the adjectives; as when I say, *préférer l'utile à l'agréable*, to prefer the useful to the agreeable; that is as if I had said, *préférer la chose utile à la chose agréable*, to prefer the useful thing to the thing that is agreeable; or *préférer ce qui est utile à ce qui est agréable*, to prefer that which is useful to that which is agreeable.

There is also another kind of nouns, which subsisting alone in a discourse, are commonly regarded as substantives, although, in fact, they are real adjectives, for they present to the mind objects as vested with qualities: such are *roi*, king; *reine*, queen; *pere*, father; *mere*, mother; *fils*, son; *époux*, husband; *épouse*, wife; *magistrat*, magistrate; *philosophe*, philosopher; *peintre*, painter; *soldat*, soldier, &c. But as the offices, or qualities signified by these words, can only suit men or women, it was needless to join substantives to them, which are understood without confusion. Thus when I say *un roi*, a king; *une reine*, a queen; it is clearly understood that I mean

a man

a man who is king, and a woman who is queen : and so of the others.

ARTICLE III. OF NUMERAL NOUNS.

NUMERAL *nouns* are so called ; because they express the numerical relations that we conceive in things.

Numeral nouns are of two kinds, *viz.*

The *numeral adjectives* and the *numeral substantives*.

The *numeral adjectives* are the *absolute* or *cardinal*, and the *ordinal* numbers.

1. The *absolute* or *cardinal*, which are so called ; because they serve in a simple, but absolute manner, to point out the different numbers which answer to the question *combien y en a-t-il* ; how many are there ?

They are,

un or *une*, one.

deux, two.

trois, three.

quatre, four.

cing, five.

six, six.

sept, seven.

huit, eight.

neuf, nine.

dix, ten.

onze, eleven.

douze, twelve.

treize, thirteen.

quatorze, fourteen.

quinze, fifteen.

seize, sixteen.

dix-sept, seventeen.

dix-huit, eighteen.

dix-neuf, nineteen.

vingt, twenty.

trente, thirty.

quarante, forty.

cinquante, fifty.

soixante, sixty.

soixante & dix, seventy.

quatre-vingt, eighty.

quatre-vingt dix, ninety.

cent, a hundred.

deux cents, two hundred.

mille, a thousand.

million, a million.

deux millions, two millions.

milliar, 1000 millions.

deux milliar, 2000 millions.

2. The *ordinal*, which are so called; because they mark the order of things with respect to number, and answer to the question, *le quantieme est-il?* which is it?

They are,

<i>le premier,</i> or	} the first.
<i>la premiere,</i>	
<i>le second,</i> or	} the second.
<i>la seconde,</i> for	
which we	
also say	
<i>le deuxieme,</i> or	} the third.
<i>la deuxieme.</i>	
<i>le troisieme,</i> or	} the third.
<i>la troisieme,</i>	
<i>le quatrieme,</i> the fourth.	
<i>le cinquieme,</i> the fifth.	

<i>le sixieme,</i> the sixth.
<i>le septieme,</i> the seventh.
<i>le huitieme,</i> the eighth.
<i>le neuvieme,</i> the ninth.
<i>le dixieme,</i> the tenth.
<i>le onzieme,</i> the eleventh.
<i>le douzieme,</i> the twelfth.
<i>le treizieme,</i> the thirteenth.
<i>le quatorzieme,</i> the fourteenth.
<i>le quinzieme,</i> the fifteenth.
<i>le seizieme,</i> the sixteenth.

Which, as you see, are formed from the absolute or cardinal, by adding *ieme* to those which end with a consonant, and by changing the final mute *e* into *ieme* in the others: except *premier* and *second*. The *f* is also changed into *v* in *neuvieme*.

The *numeral substantives* are the *collective*, or those of *assemblage*; the *distributive*, or those of *partition*; and the *augmentative*, or those of *increase*.

1. The *collective*, or those of *assemblage*, are so called; because they express a determinate quantity of things as reunited, and as only making one.

They are,

<i>Une dixaine,</i> ten.	} {	<i>Une trentaine,</i> thirty.
<i>Une douzaine,</i> a dozen.		<i>Une centaine,</i> a hundred.
<i>Une demi-douzaine,</i> half a dozen.		<i>Un millier,</i> a thousand.
<i>Une vingtaine,</i> twenty.		<i>Un million,</i> a million, &c.

* * We can say in the same sense *un quatrain*, *un sixain*, *un huitain*, *un dixain*, to express stanzas of four, six, eight and ten verses.

2. The

2. The *distributive* or those of *partition*, are so called; because they express what the part of a number is, with regard to the whole.

They are,

La moitié, the half.

Un tiers, a third.

Un quart, a fourth.

Un cinquieme, a fifth, which on certain occasions is also called *le quint*.

Un sixieme, a sixth.

Un septieme, a seventh.

Un huitieme, an eighth.

Un neuvieme, a ninth.

Un dixieme, a tenth, which on certain occasions is also called *un dixme*, or *dime*, &c.

Thus, if you ask me what proportion there is between *six* or *eight*, I answer, that two is the (*tiers*) third, or third part of *six*, and that it is the (*quart*) fourth, or fourth part of *eight*, &c.

3. The *augmentative*, or those of *increase*, are so called; because they show, in one word, how often the same number, or quantity is repeated.

They are,

Le double, the double.

Le triple, the triple.

Le quadruple, the qua-

druple.

Le centuple, the centou-
ple, &c.

* * There are three things to be considered in nouns, as well substantive as adjective, *viz.* gender, number and case; but as I have treated already of each of these in pages 54, 55, and 56, we shall now content ourselves with giving the general rules for the genders of nouns, with their exceptions.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE IV.

RULES for the GENDERS of NOUNS
SUBSTANTIVE.

RULE I. **A**LL the proper names of *God, Angels, Men, Demons*, and of the *fabulous gods* are masculine; as, *le Seigneur Dieu*, the Lord God; *Michel, Michæl*; *Pierre, Peter*; *Lucifer, Lucifer*; *Jupiter, Jupiter*; *Merçure, Mercury*, &c. All the names that belong to the males of animals are also masculine; as, *un cheval*, a horse; *un hongre*, a gelding; *un Barbe*, a Barbary horse; &c.

RULE II. All the substantives of dignities, trades, and offices, belonging to men, are masculine; as, *chancelier*, chancellor; *conseiller*, counsellor; *évêque*, bishop; *cordonnier*, shoe-maker, &c.

EXCEPTION I. *La sentinelle*, the sentinel; *la ronde*, the round; *la patrouille*, the patrol; and *les gardes*, in speaking of the regiments of foot-guards; as *les gardes Françaises*, the French guards; are feminine.

EXCEPTION II. Say also *la saint André*, St. Andrew's day; *la saint jean*, mid-summer; *la saint Michel*, Michæl-mass; *la saint Martin*, Martin-mass, &c. In which *fête* is understood, as if you said *la fête de saint André*, the holy day of saint Andrew, &c. are feminine.

RULE III. The names of *months, seasons* of the year, and *days* of the week are masculine; as, *Janvier*, January; *Fevrier*, February; *le prin-tems*, the spring; *Lundi*, Monday, &c.

EXCEPTION I. In composition you must say in the feminine *la mi-Avril*, *la mi-Mars*, *la mi-Août*, &c.: for
mi

mi stands for *moitié*, half; and is as if you had said *la moitié d'Avril*, the half of *April*.

EXCEPTION II. *Automne* is better feminine than masculine, say *une belle automne*, a beautiful autumn.

RULE IV. The names of *trees* are masculine; as, *un chêne*, an oak; *un frêne*, an ash-tree; *un palmier*, a palm, or date-tree, &c.

EXCEPTION I. *Ebene*, ebony; *yeuse*, a holm-oak; *vigne*, a vine; *viorne*, a wild vine; *épine*, a thorn; *ronce*, bramble; are feminine.

EXCEPTION II. *Palme*, is also feminine, but then it signifies the palm-branch, and not the tree, as some would have it.

RULE V. Adjectives taken substantively are masculine; as, *le plaisant*, the pleasant; *le nécessaire*, the necessary; *le rouge*, red, &c.

EXCEPTION I. *Une perpendiculaire*, a perpendicular; *une tangente*, a tangeant; *une courbe*, a curve, &c. are feminine; because *ligne*, a line; is understood, as if you said *une ligne perpendiculaire*, a perpendicular line, &c.

EXCEPTION II. *Antique*, an antique; is feminine: for you must understand with it, *statue*, statue; *médaille*, medal; *piece*, piece; or some other feminine substantive.

RULE VI. Infinitives of verbs and prepositions taken as substantives are masculine; as, *le manger*, eating; *le boire*, drinking; *le dormir*, sleeping; *le devant*, before; *le derriere*, behind, &c.

RULE VII. Nouns of the *cardinal*, *ordinal* and *distributive* numbers are masculine. Vide pages 71, 72 and 73. Except *une*, *la premiere*, *la seconde*, *la deuxieme*, *la troisieme*, and *la moitié*, which are feminine.

RULE VIII. Nouns composed of a verb and a noun are masculine; as, *un tourne-broche*, a turn-spit; *un casse-noisette*, nut-crackers; *un porte-feuille*, a letter-case; *un coupe-gorge*, a cut-throat, &c.

RULE

RULE IX. Nouns ending with any other consonant than *x*; or with any other vowel than *e* feminine, are generally masculine; as, *un a*, *un é*, *un b*.

E X C E P T I O N S

From this RULE.

1. You must say *une f*, *une b*, *une l*, *une m*, *une n*, *une r*, *une s*, in the feminine; for they are pronounced as if they written *èffe*, *awssb*, *èlle*, *ème*, *ène*, *erre*, *èsse*.
2. The nouns ended in *tié* and *té*, coming from the Latin words in *tas*, are feminine; as, *une amitié*, a friendship; *la bonté*, kindness; *la charité*, charity, &c. *Comté*, county; in the word *franche comté*, by adding *pairie*, *duché*, is also feminine.
3. All names of females are feminine; as *Venus*, *Venus*; *Junon*, Juno; *Circé*, Circe; *Marie*, Mary, &c. as also all the substantives of dignities belonging to them.
4. The following in *f* are feminine, viz. *clef*, key; *nef*, nave of a church; *soif*, thirst.
5. The following in *i* are feminine, *foi*, faith; *loi*, law; *fourmi*, ant; *merci*, mercy.
6. *Faim*, hunger; *main*, hand; *fin*, the end; *chan-son*, song; *cuisson*, toasting; *leçon*, lesson; *façon*, fashion, or make; *rançon*, ransom; *boisson*, drink; *moisson*, harvest; and the nouns in *ison*, with those in *ion*, coming from the Latins in *io*, are feminine; as, *la prison*, the prison; *la maison*, the house; *la religion*, religion; *une action*, an action; *une passion*, a passion, &c. But *tison*, a firebrand; *horison*, horizon; *poison*, poison; are masculine.
7. *Chair*, raw flesh; *cour*, court; *cuillier*, a spoon; *mer*, sea; *tour*, tower; and the nouns ending in *eur* are feminine: except *heur*, or *bonheur*, happiness; *malheur*, misfortune; *honneur*, honour; *deshonneur*, dishonour;

mour; *cœur*, heart; *chœur*, choir; *labeur*, labour; which are masculine.

8. *Vis*, screw; *fouris*, mouse; *une fois*, once; are feminine.

9. *Dent*, tooth; *forêt*, forest; *mort*, death; *nuit*, night; *part*, part; *hart*, halter; *dot*, dowry, are feminine.

10. *Eau*, water; *peau*, skin; *vertu*, virtue; *glu*, birdlime; *tribu*, a tribe; and the nouns in *x* are feminine: except *prix*, price; *choix*, choice; *borax*, borax; *storax*, storax; *styx*, styx; which are masculine.

11. Nouns ending with an *e* feminine, are generally feminine: but if they end in *age*, *ege*, *uge*, *acle*, *eme*, *aume*, *ôme*, *isme*, they are masculine. Except *cage*, *image*, *page*, *plage*, *rage*, *nage*, *creme*, *paume*, which are feminine.

A LIST of WORDS, which are masculine, or feminine, according to the Sense they bear.

1. **A**IGLE, an eagle; is masculine or feminine; but the masculine is much more in use: but when it expresses the ensign of the ancient *Romans*, it is always feminine.

2. *Barbe*, a *Barbary* horse, is masculine; but expressing the beard, it is feminine.

3. *Coche*, a kind of chariot or boat, is masculine; but expressing a sow, it is feminine.

4. *Cornette*, a cornet of horse, is masculine; but expressing a woman's cornet, &c. it is feminine.

5. *Enseigne*, an ensign, is masculine; but when it expresses a tavern-sign, it is feminine.

6. *Couple*, two persons united by love or by marriage, or when it signifies a chain for two dogs, it is masculine; but when it signifies a pair, it is feminine.

7. *Exemple*, example, or pattern, is masculine; but when it signifies a copy to write after, it is feminine.

8. *Echo*,

8. *Echo*, the repetition of a sound is masculine, but signifying the nymph *Echo*, is feminine.

9. *Espace*, space or extent, is masculine; but when it signifies a printer's rule, it is feminine.

10. *Etude*, the action of study, is masculine; but signifying the chamber, or closet, in which one studies, is feminine.

11. *Garderobe*, a harn or linen frock over children's cloaths, &c. is masculine; but signifying a wardrobe or privy, is feminine.

12. *Greffe*, the registry, is masculine: but signifying a small branch for engrafting, is feminine.

13. *Livre*, a book, is masculine; but expressing a pound weight, a piece of money of twenty sous, or a pound sterling, is feminine.

14. *Manche*, the handle, is masculine; but expressing the sleeve of a coat, or the *British* channel, is feminine.

15. *Mémoire*, note or memorandum, is masculine; but signifying the memory, is feminine.

16. *Oeuvre*, a book, or work of the mind, is masculine; but for an action of the hands, &c. is feminine; and it is always feminine in the plural.

17. *Ordinaire*, ordinary, or table fare, is masculine; but signifying practice, is feminine.

18. *Mode*, the mood of a verb, &c. is masculine; but for the mode, or fashion, is feminine.

19. *Moule*, a mould, is masculine; but for a muscle, or kind of fish, is feminine.

20. *Office*, an office, charge, or divine service, is masculine; but for the buttery, is feminine.

21. *Paralele*, comparison, is masculine; but for a line, as, *une ligne paralele*, a parallel line; is feminine.

22. *Periode*, the period of time that a star takes to make its course, is masculine; but for the period of a book, &c. is feminine.

23. *Personne* (nemo) nobody, is masculine; but for (aliquis) any body, &c. is feminine.

24. *Poile*,

24. *Poile*, a stove for a room, is masculine; but for a frying pan, is feminine.

25. *Poste*, a soldier's post, station, or a retrenched place, is masculine; but for the post or post-house, is feminine.

26. *Pourpre*, a spotted fever, is masculine; but for a sort of die, &c. is feminine.

27. *Temple*, a temple or church, is masculine; but for the temple of the head, is feminine.

28. *Voile*, a woman's vail, is masculine; but for the sail of a ship, is feminine.

* * There are some words, which though they retain their natural meaning, are, however, of different genders, according as they are placed. Such as,

1. The plural noun *gens*, people; is feminine, when preceded by its adjective; as, *les bonnes gens de Paris*, the good people of *Paris*, &c. And masculine when its adjective follows it; as, *les gens savants pensent comme lui*, the learned people think as he does, &c.

2. *Amour*, which in the singular is masculine, is sometimes feminine in the plural, when we would mean a disorderly passion; as, *les folles amours*, foolish loves or amours; *premieres amours*, first loves or amours.

3. *Comté* and *duché* are only masculine, yet we say in the feminine, *la franche-comté*, the free county; *une comté-pairie*, a county with peerage; *une duché-pairie*, a dutchy with peerage.

4. *Chose*, by itself is always feminine; as, *une bonne chose*, a good thing, &c. But if you add *quelque*, some; to it, it is often masculine; as, *quelque chose de bon*, something good; *quelque chose de vrai*, something true, &c.

RULES for the GENDERS of NOUNS ADJECTIVE, with their Exceptions.

AS the genders of nouns substantive are generally distinguished by the articles, *le* and *la*, *un* and *une*, &c. So the genders of nouns adjective are distinguished by their different terminations; as, *tout*, makes in the feminine, *toute*, all; *prudent*, makes *prudente*, prudent.

There are two general rules to know the terminations of nouns adjective with respect to the two genders, viz.

I. Adjectives ending the masculine with an *e* mute, unexceptionably never change that termination in the feminine. So *honnête*, honest; *fidele*, faithful; *sage*, wise; *servile*, servil, &c. are the same in the feminine.

II. All other adjectives, to form the feminine, commonly add an *e* mute to the masculine. So *aimé*, beloved; *charmant*, charming; *grand*, great; *second*, fruitful; *joli*, pretty, &c. make in the feminine, *aimée*, *charmante*, *grande*, *seconde*, *jolie*, &c.

E X C E P T I O N S.

1. Some nouns adjective, besides the mute *e* which they take in the feminine, double also the final consonant of the masculine. They are in general such as end their masculines in *el*, *eil*, *ol*, *ul*, *ien*, *on*, *as*, *ès*, *os*, *et*, *ot*, *ut*; as, *cruel*, cruel; *mutuel*, mutual; *pareil*, like; *fol*, mad; *mol*, soft; which make *cruelle*, *mutuelle*, *pareille*, *folle*, *molle* in the feminine.

* * * Write and say *fou*, *mou* in the masculine before a substantive beginning with a consonant, and *fol*, *mol*, before one beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute.

Nul,

Nul, none; *ancien*, ancient; *bon*, good; *gras*, fat; *exprès*, on purpose; *gros*, large, lusty; *net*, neat; make *nulle*, *ancienne*, *bonne*, *grasse*, *expresse*, *grosse*, *nette*; but you must except from this last termination the following, *viz.* *complet*, compleat; *discret*, discreet; *inquiet*, uneasy; *replet*, replete; *secret*, secret; which do not double the *t*, *complete*, *discrete*, *inquiète*, *replete*, *secrete*.

Cagot, bigot; *magot*, booby; *vieillot*, oldish; *sot*, foolish; *brut*, rough; make *cagotte*, *magotte*, *vieillotte*, *sotte*, *brutte*.

* * Of all the nouns ending in *at*, there is only *mat*, unpolished; and *plat*, flat; which double the *t* in the feminine, *matte*, *platte*.

Beau, handsome; *nouveau*, new; and *vieux*, old; which are also written *bel*, *nouvel*, *vieil*, in the masculine, when they precede a noun substantive, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, make, for that reason, *belle*, *nouvelle*, *vieille*, in the feminine.

2. *Blanc*, white; *franc*, frank or free; *sec*, dry; make *blanche*, *franche*, *seche*: *Grec*, Greek; *public*, public; *caduc*, decaying; and *Turc*, Turkish; make *Greque*, *publique*, *caduque*, and *Turque* in the feminine.

3. The adjectives ending the masculine in *f*, change that letter into *v*, in the feminine; as, *actif*, active; *fugitif*, fugitive; *bref*, short; *vif*, lively; *neuf*, new; *naïf*, simple or natural; which make *active*, *fugitive*, *breve*, *vive*, *neuve*, and *naïve* in the feminine.

4. *Long*, long; makes *longue*.

5. *Favori*, favourite; makes *favorite*.

6. *Gentil*, genteel; in which the *l* is mute, makes *gentille*, with *ll* liquid.

7. *Benin*, kind; *malin*, malicious; make *benigne*, *maligne*.

8. The adjectives in *eur*, generally make their feminines in *euse*; as, *trompeur*, deceiver; *parleur*, talker; *chanteur*, singer; which make *trompeuse*, *parleuse*, *chanteuse*. Some make it in *eresse*; as, *pêcheur*, sinner;

demandeur, plaintiff; *défendeur*, defendant; *divineur*, diviner; which make *péchereffe*, *demandereffe*, *défendereffe*, *divinereffe*. Some make it in *trice*; as, *acteur*, actor; *protecteur*, protector; which make *actrice*, *protectrice*. Some have no feminine; as, *auteur*, author; *vainqueur*, conqueror, &c. And in fine, some form it regularly by adding an *e* mute; as, *meilleur*, better; *majeur*, major; *mineur*, minor; *supérieur*, superior; *inférieur*, inferior; *prieur*, prior; which make *meilleure*, *majeure*, *mineure*, *supérieure*, *inférieure*, and *prieure*.

9. *Frais*, fresh; *épais*, thick; *ras*, shorn; *tiers*, third; make *fraiche*, *épaisse*, *rase*, *tierce*.

10. The adjectives ending in *eux* and *oux*, change the *x* into *se*; as, *dangereux*, dangerous; *honteux*, shameful; *jalous*, jealous; which make *dangereuse*, *honteuse*, *jalouse*, in the feminine.

11. *Doux*, sweet; *faux*, false; *crud*, raw; *roux*, red; make *douce*, *fausse*, *crue*, *rousse*.

Note. There are, perhaps, some other exceptions less considerable, which may be acquired by practice.

ARTICLE V.

Of the FORMATION of the PLURAL NUMBER of NOUNS.

BESIDES what I have said in page 55, concerning the numbers of nouns, we may add, that there are still two ways to distinguish them in speaking, or writing.

1. A noun substantive is in the singular, when it is, or may be preceded by *le* or *la*, &c.; and it is in the plural, when it is, or may be preceded by *les*, &c. So when I say *le jardin*, the garden; *la porte*, the door; these nouns are in the singular: and, when I say *les jardins*, the gardens; *les portes*, the doors, &c. they are in the plural.

2. In

2. In the greatest part, both of nouns substantive and adjective, the final letters of the singular are different from those of the plural.

A GENERAL RULE to form the PLURAL of NOUNS.

When a noun does not end with an *s* in the singular, one must be added in the plural; as, *le pere*, the father; *les peres*, the fathers; *la maison*, the house; *les maisons*, the houses, &c.

E X C E P T I O N S.

I. Nouns ending the singular in *au*, or *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, or *ieu* and *ou*, form the plural by adding an *x*; as, *un gruau*, a gruel, *des gruaux*, gruels; *le bateau*, the boat, *les bateaux*, the boats; *le feu*, the fire, *les feux*, the fires; *le vœu*, the vow, *les vœux*, the vows; *le lieu*, the place, *les lieux*, the places; *le caillou*, the flint, *les cailloux*, the flints, &c. But *bleu*, *clou*, *trou*, and *matou*, follow the general rule; *bleus*, *clous*, &c.

Of all the nouns ending the singular in *oi*, there is only *loi*, law, which takes an *x* in the plural; *les loix*, the laws: the rest take an *s* according to the general rule; as, *le roi*, the king, *les rois*, the kings, &c.

* * *Oeil*, eye; *ayeul*, grandfire; *vieil*, old; *ciel*, heaven; make in the plural, *yeux*, *ayeux*, *vieux*, *cieux*; but we say however, *des ciels de lits*, roofs of beds; *des ciels de tableaux*, the sky, or shades of a picture; *des arc-en-ciels*, rainbows; *des œils de boeuf*, ovals; a term in architecture.

II. Nouns ending the singular in *al* and *ail*, commonly make their plural in *aux*; as, *cheval*, a horse; *mal*, evil; *travail*, labour, &c. make *chevaux*, *maux*, *travaux*, &c.

Except for the nouns in *al*, the following substantives, *bal*, *cal*, *pal*, *régal*; and the adjectives *austral*, *boréal*, *conjugal*, *fatal*, *filial*, *final*, *frugal*, *jovial*, *littéral*, *naval*,

val, paschal, pastoral, trivial, vènal, &c. of which the most part either have no plural, or they form it by adding an *s* to the singular.

Except also for those in *ail*, the substantives *attirail, bercail, camail, détail, éventail, gouvernail, mail, portail, portail, sèrail*, and some others, which either have no plural, or form it also by adding an *s* to the singular.

↓ The adjective *pénitentiel*, makes *pénitentiaux*; as, *les pseumes pénitentiaux*, the penitential psalms; and the substantive *universel*, makes *universaux*; as, *les cinq universaux de logique*, the five universals of logic: but when it is an adjective it follows the general rule; as, *des hommes universels*, universal men.

III. Nouns ending the singular with an *s*, *z*, or *x*, remain the same in the plural; as, *le fils*, the son, *les fils*, the sons; *le nez*, the nose, *les nez*, the noses; *la voix*, the voice, *les voix*, the voices, &c.

Monfieur, sir; and *madame*, madam; make *messieurs* and *mesdames*.

There are some nouns which have only the singular, and others which have only the plural.

Those which have only the singular are,

1. All proper names of men, women, &c.

2. The names of metals in general; as, *Or*, gold; *argent*, silver; *cuivre*, brass, &c.; and, if we sometimes say, *des fers*, irons; *des cuivres*, brasses; *des plombs*, leads; it is because we then consider these metals, as put to use, or divided into several parts.

3. The names of the *habitual virtues*, and of *vices*; as, *la foi*, faith; *la prudence*, prudence; *la pudeur*, modesty; *l'exactitude*, exactness; *la defiance*, distrust; *l'amour*, love; *la haine*, hatred, &c.

4. The following *ail*, *air*, *absynthe*, *couroux*, *bercail*, *bétail*, *faim*, *soif*, *fièvre*, and the most part of the names of diseases; *paix*, *santé*, *sang*, *sommeil*, *repos*, *gloire*, *estime*, *pâleur*, *labeur*, *pourpre*, *renommée*, *grêle*, *neige*, *foudre*, *batême*, *encens*, *benjoin*, *velours*, *satén*, *brocard*,
odorat,

odorat, vue, le toucher, le manger, le boire, le dormir, l'utile, le nécessaire, and several others.

Those which have only the plural are, *matines, nones, vêpres, ténèbres, pleurs, gens, ancêtres, ciseaux, pinces, délices, &c.*

Tout, all; forms the plural by changing *t* into *s*, *tous*.

R E M A R K S.

1. **N**OUNS ending in *ant* and *ent*, form their plural according to the general rule; as, *le jour charmant*, the charming day, *les jours charmants*, the charming days; *diamant*, diamond, *diamants*, diamonds; *séduisant*, seducing, *séduisants*, seducers; *le bâtiment*, the building, *les batiments*, the buildings; *le conseil prudent*, the prudent counsel, *les conseils prudents*, the prudent counsels; *gant*, glove, *gants*, gloves; *cent*, a hundred, *cents*, hundreds; *dent*, a tooth, *dents*, teeth; *lent*, slow, *lents*; *vent*, wind, *vents*, winds, &c.

2. Of all the absolute nouns of number, there are only *vingt*, twenty; *cent*, hundred; which take an *s*, when we speak of several twenties, or of several hundreds; as when we say, *quatre-vingts*, fourscore; *six-vingts*, six score; *sept-vingts*, seven score; *huit-vingts*, eight score; *deux cents* two hundred; *trois cents*, three hundred; *quatre cents*, four hundred, &c. But you must observe with regard to *vingt*, in the plural, that it only takes *s* when it is immediately followed by a noun substantive; as, *quatre vingts chevaux*, fourscore of horses; *cent quatre vingts pistoles*, a hundred fourscore pistoles; *quatre vingts ans*, fourscore years; *six vingts hommes*, six score men; and it is written without *s* when it precedes another noun of number, to which it is joined; as, *quatre-vingt deux*, eighty-two; *quatre-vingt trois*,

trois, eighty-three; *quatre-vingt quatre*, eighty-four; *quatre-vingt dix*, ninety, &c. *quatre-vingt deuxieme*, eighty-second; *quatre-vingt troisieme*, eighty-third.

The other nouns of number are always written without variation, as you may see pages 71, 72, and 73.

3. *Mille*, a thousand, never takes the *s*; write *deux mille*, two thousand; *trois mille*, three thousand; *quatre mille*, four thousand, &c. and *mil* is only used, when we mark the year current from an *epocha*; as, *l'an mil sept cent soixante dix depuis la naissance de Jesus Christ*, the year 1770 since the birth of Jesus Christ; *cent* on this occasion does not take the *s*, although preceded by *sept*; because it is an absolute noun of number, put for an ordinal; and we only mean in it one year, as if there was *l'an millieme sept-centieme soixante-dixieme*.

ARTICLE VI.

Of the DEGREES *of* COMPARISON.

COMPARISON generally means the different ways by which the *qualities of persons, or things* are expressed.

Nouns adjective alone, are susceptible of the degrees of comparison, as they only express *qualities*.

The degrees of comparison are three, *viz.* the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*. Although properly speaking, the positive is not a degree of comparison; but it is called the first degree of comparison, as it is as the foundation and origin of the others.

I. *The* POSITIVE.

The *positive* expresses the quality in its simple and natural state, without any comparison; or it is the simple adjective, without adding any thing to it. So *beauty*, handsome;

handsome; *chaud*, warm; and *grand*, great; are positive adjectives.

II. The COMPARATIVE.

The *comparative* expresses a thing as compared with another, by the same, or by different qualities.

It is of three kinds, *viz.*

1. The *comparative of equality*, which is formed by putting the words *autant*, *aussi*, or *si*, before the adjectives; as, *autant habile que lui*, as skilful as he; *aussi sage que prudent*, as wise as prudent; *il n'est pas si riche que vous*, he is not so rich as you.

2. The *comparative of excess*, which is formed by putting the word *plus* before the adjectives; as *il est plus adroit que vous ne pensez*, he is more sly than you think; *elle est plus sage que sa sœur*, & *plus belle que sa cousine*, she is wiser than her sister, and fairer than her cousin.

3. The *comparative of defect*, which is formed by putting the word *moins* before the adjectives; as, *il est moins heureux que le bon homme son père*, he is less happy than the good man his father; *elles sont moins parfaites que les autres*, they are less perfect than the others, &c.

REMARKS on the COMPARATIVE.

1. **W**HEN I say *l'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe*, *Asia* is larger than *Europe*; I compare *Asia* and *Europe* by a single quality, which is that of *largeness*; and when I say *les richesses sont souvent plus funestes, que la pauvreté n'est incommode*, riches are often more fatal than poverty is troublesome; I compare riches and poverty by the different qualities *fatal* and *troublesome*.

88 DEGREES of COMPARISON.

2. In every comparison there are always two terms, viz. the thing *compared*, and the thing to which it is *compared*, and these terms are joined by the mean of the conjunction *que*, than; as, *l'histoire est plus utile que la musique*, history is more useful than music; *Alexandre étoit moins prudent que César*, Alexander was less prudent than Cesar, &c.

3. There are some comparatives expressed in one word; as, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less; which signify the same as *plus bon* (which is no longer in use) *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*.

III. The SUPERLATIVE.

The *superlative* expresses a thing in its highest degree of quality.

It is of two kinds, viz.

1. *The superlative absolute*, which expresses the quality of a thing in the highest degree, in an absolute manner, without referring to any other thing. It is formed by putting *très*, or *fort*, before the adjectives; as, *Cicéron étoit très éloquent*, Cicero was very eloquent; *vous procédez fort honnête*, your behaviour is most obliging, &c.

2. *The superlative relative*, which expresses the quality of a thing in the highest degree with a comparative relation to some other thing. It is formed by putting *plus* preceded by the definite article before the adjectives; as, *Alexandre étoit le plus brave des hommes*, Alexander was the bravest of men; *ma sœur est la plus heureuse des femmes*, my sister is the happiest of women, &c. in which you see that the superlative adjective has a comparative reference to a second term, which is *des hommes*, in the first example, and *des femmes* in the other.

REMARKS on the SUPERLATIVE.

1. **T**HE second term in the superlative is sometimes understood; as, *il y a trente écoliers en rhétorique*; *mon frère est le plus habile*, there are thirty scholars

lars in rhetoric; my brother is the best; that is to say, *le plus habile des trente écoliers*, the best of the thirty scholars. The noun which expresses the second term of the superlative relative is always put in the genitive.

2. *Bon, mauvais* and *petit* are irregular, and are thus compared :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Mal. <i>Bon</i> , Fem. <i>bonne</i> , Mal. <i>Mauvais</i> , Fem. <i>mauvaise</i> , Mal. <i>petit</i> , Fem. <i>petite</i> ,	good. } <i>Meilleur</i> , } <i>meilleure</i> , } better. bad. } <i>pire</i> , } <i>pire</i> , } worse. little. } <i>moindre</i> , } <i>moins</i> , } less.	<i>Le meilleur</i> , } the } <i>la meilleure</i> , } best. <i>le pire</i> , } the } <i>la pire</i> , } worst. <i>le moindre</i> , } the } <i>la moindre</i> , } least.
Their adverbs are compared in the following manner:		
<i>Bien</i> , well. } <i>mal</i> , ill. } <i>peu</i> , little.	<i>mieux</i> , better. } <i>pis</i> , worse. } <i>moins</i> , less.	<i>le mieux</i> , the best. } <i>le pis</i> , the worst. } <i>le moins</i> , the least.

Mauvais, petit and *mal*, make also in their comparatives and superlatives, *plus mauvais, le plus mauvais; plus petit, le plus petit; plus mal, le plus mal*.

3. *Moindre*

3. *Moindre* seems to refer to the quality, and *plus petit* to the quantity; as, *les plus petits ne sont pas les moindres*, the smallest (in bulk) are not the most inferior in (quality.)

4. The following from the *Latin*, on certain occasions, may be ranked among the superlatives; viz. *éminentissime, illustrissime, révérendissime, sérénissime, grandissime, généralissime*.

5. The adverbs *plus, moins, tant, and autant*, are used before substantives, when we make comparisons of quantity; as, *il a plus d'argent que le roi*, he has more money than the king; *elle est moins bête que sa soeur*, she is less a brute than her sister; *vous n'aurez pas tant de peine que vous croyez*, you will not have so much trouble as you think; *ils ont autant de peur que nous*, they are as much afraid as we, &c. *tant* is put with a negation, and *autant* with an affirmation.

C H A P. VII.

Of the PRONOUN.

PRONOUN is so called; because it is ordinarily put for a noun.

Pronouns are put either before verbs or nouns, or they are alone in an absolute sense, and mark a person, or a thing as acting, or as suffering; as, *je parle*, I speak; *tu écris*, thou writest; *mon frere est aimé*, my brother is beloved, &c.

Pronouns are of seven kinds; viz. The *Personal, conjunctive, possessive, demonstrative, relative, absolute, and indefinite*.

* * You must observe that grammarians have ranked in the number of pronouns the following words, *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, cet, quel, quelque, cer-*
tain,

tain, &c. with their feminines and plurals; though properly speaking, they are pure adjectives, as they cannot be used without a substantive.

ARTICLE I.

Of the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL *pronouns* serve to mark the three persons, singular and plural, in a *direct manner*; or they stand in their stead.

For *the first person*. If *William* speaks and wants to inform us that he is returned from the country, because they had need of him, he will say, *je suis revenu de la campagne, parce qu'on avoit besoin de moi*, I am returned from the country, because they had need of me; and not *Guillaume suis revenu de la campagne, parce qu'on avoit besoin de Guillaume*.

For *the second*. If I want to warn *James* to take care of himself, I will say to him, *tu dois prendre garde à toi*, or *vous devez prendre garde à vous*, thou oughtest to take care of thyself, or you ought to take care of yourself; and not *Jaques dois*, or *devez prendre garde à Jaques*.

For *the third*. If I want to speak of *John, Mary, houses*, or *gardens*, I will say, *il se dérange, je ne suis pas content de lui*, he disorders himself, I am not pleased with him; *elle est aimable*, she is lovely; *elles sont dans une belle situation*, they are in a beautiful situation; *ils ont de belles promenades*, they have beautiful walks, &c. And to avoid repeating the name we have recourse to *il, lui*, or *elle* for the singular, and *ils, eux*, or *elles* for the plural. So *the first person*, always speaks of itself: *the second* is the one spoken to: and *the third* is the one spoken of.

The

Of the PRONOUN.

The pronouns for each of the three persons are,

1. *Je* and *moi*, I; for the singular, } of both genders.
and *nous*, we; for the plural.
2. *Tu* and *toi*, thou; for the singular, } of both genders.
and *vous*, ye or you; for the plural.
3. { *Il* and *lui*, he; for the singular, and } masculine.
 Ils and *eux*, they; for the plural. }
 Elle, she; for the singular, and } feminine.
 elles, they; for the plural. }

These pronouns are all declined with the indefinite articles. Thus,

*First person.**Singular.*

Nom. *je*, or *moi*, I.
Gen. Abl. *de moi*, of, or
by me.
Dat. *à moi*, to me.
Acc. *moi*, me.

Plural.

Nom. Acc. *nous*, we, or us.
Gen. Abl. *de nous*, of, or
by us.
Dat. *à nous*, to us.
- - - - -

*Second person.**Singular.*

Nom. *tu*, or *toi*, thou.
Gen. Abl. *de toi*, of, or
by thee.
Dat. *à toi*, to thee.
Acc. *toi*, thee.

Plural.

Nom. Acc. *vous*, ye, or
you.
Gen. Abl. *de vous*, of, or
by you.
Dat. *à vous*, to you.

*Third person masculine.**Singular.*

Nom. *il*, or *lui*, he.
Gen. Abl. *de lui*, of, or
by him.
Dat. *à lui*, to him.
Acc. *lui*, him.

Plural.

Nom. *ils*, or *eux*, they.
Gen. Abl. *d' eux*, of, or
by them.
Dat. *à eux*, to them.
Acc. *eux*, them.

*Third person feminine.**Singular.*

Nom. Acc. *elle*, she, her.
Gen. Abl. *d' elle*, of, or
by her.
Dat. *à elle*, to her.

Plural.

N. Ac. *elles*, they, them.
Gen. Abl. *d' elles*, of, or
by them.
Dat. *à elles*, to them.

There

There are still two other personal pronouns of the third person; *viz.* The reflective, *soi*, and the general and indeclinable pronoun *on*.

Soi marks the affinity, or connection which a person or a thing has with itself. This affinity is also expressed by the other personal pronouns, by adding *même* to the singular, and *mêmes* to the plural; as, *tu ne parle que de toi-même*, thou dost not speak but of thyself; *les indiscrets se trahissent souvent eux-mêmes*, the indiscreet often betray themselves.

It is thus declined.

Nom. Acc. *soi*,

Gen. Abl. *de soi*,

Dat. *à soi*,

REMARKS on SOI.

1. **I**T is of both genders, and although it is most commonly used in the singular, there are nevertheless some occasions wherein it connects with nouns plural; as, *ces choses de soi sont indifférentes*, these things of themselves are indifferent.

2. Its ordinary plural is *eux-mêmes*, or *elles-mêmes*, according as it connects with masculine or feminine nouns; as, *ces principes sont solides en eux-mêmes*, these principles are solid in themselves; *ces choses sont bonnes par elles-mêmes*, these things are good of themselves.

3. It is seldom used in the nominative, and even then it must have *même* with it, and never in the vocative.

REMARKS on ON.

1. *On* marks a kind of general and indeterminate third person; as, *on mange*, they eat; *on joue*, they play, &c. which means in general persons who eat and play, without either naming them, or determining their number.

2. It is thought that this word is formed by abbreviation or corruption from *homme*. So when I say *on mange*,
on

on joue, &c. it is as if I had said *homme mange*, man eats; *homme joue*, man plays, &c. and this conjecture is founded on two reasons.

I. In some languages, such as the *Italian*, *German*, and *English*, we find the words which signify *homme*, used in the same manner as the general pronoun *on*.

II. That *on* takes sometimes the definite article *l'* like *homme*; thus we say *l'on mange*, *l'on joue*, doubtless, because they formerly said *l'homme mange*, *l'homme joue*, &c.

3. *L'on* is used to render the discourse more flowing, and on the occasions where *on* with the preceding word would have a too harsh pronunciation, or would give place to a double meaning. In general *on* is better than *l'on*.

4. *L'on* is preferable to *on* after *&*, *si*, *où*, and *que* when it is followed by the syllable *con*, or *com*. The ear requires that we say *l'on travailla*, they laboured; *si l'on peut*, if he can; *où l'on veut*, wherein they will; *que l'on continue*, let them continue; *que l'on commence*, let them begin, &c. rather than *on travailla*, *si on peut*, *où on veut*.

5. The adjectives which connect with *on* are always masculine; as, *en étudiant on devient savant*, by studying we become knowing.

6. As *on* only expresses a general and indeterminate third person, it is never used but in the singular, and the adjective to which it refers must be in the same.

7. *On* by itself is indeclinable: but when the cases of the reflective pronoun *soi*, or *soi-même* imply a vague and indeterminate third person, they may be looked upon as the cases of the general pronoun *on*, which is only used in the nominative. So in these phrases *autour de soi*, around one's self; *penser à soi*, to think on one's self; *n'aimer que soi*, not to love any but himself, &c. *de soi*, *à soi*, and *soi* may be taken for the genitive, ablative, dative, and accusatives of the general pronoun *on*.

Nom. Acc. *on*. Gen. Abl. *de soi-même*. Dat. *à soi-même*.

ARTICLE.

ARTICLE II.

Of the CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

THE *conjunctive pronouns* are twelve in number; viz. *me, nous, te, vous, se, lui, leur, y, le, la, les, en*; are indeclinable, and are called *conjunctive*; because they are always joined to verbs by which they are governed.

They are divided according to the three persons.

For the first person.

Me, me; singular, and } of both genders.
nous, us; plural.

For the second person.

Te, thee; singular, and } of both genders.
vous, you; plural.

For the third person.

Lui, him, or her; masculine or feminine. } for the singular.

le, him; mas.

la, her; fem.

les, them.

leur, their.

} of both genders: plural.

se, himself, herself, &c. } of both genders: singular and plural.

en, and y. } of both genders: singular and plural.

These pronouns although indeclinable, express the same relations as the pronouns personal, and are put for their cases.

I. *Me* is put for the dative or accusative of the personal *moi*; as, *vous me donnez un livre*, you give me a book; *vous me regardez*, you look at me, &c. instead of saying by the personal, *vous donnez un livre à moi, vous regardez moi*.

* * * The

* * The personal pronoun *moi* is sometimes used as a conjunctive, in the dative without an article; as, *donnez moi un livre*, give me a book; instead of *donnez un livre à moi*.

Nous, for the dative or accusative of the personal *nous*, plural; as, *le roi nous accorde une grace*, the king grants us a favour; *le ciel nous favorise*, heaven favours us, &c. instead of *le roi accorde une grace à nous*, *le ciel favorise nous*.

Te, for the dative or accusative of the personal *toi*; as, *ton maître te donnera une récompense*, thy master will reward thee; *ton maître te punira*, thy master will punish thee, &c. instead of *ton maître donnera une récompense à toi*, *ton maître punira toi*.

* * The personal *toi* is sometimes used as a conjunctive, in the dative, without an article; as, *donne toi un habit*, give thyself a coat; instead of *donne un habit à toi*.

Vous, for the dative or accusative of the personal pronoun *vous* plural; as, *je vous porterai de l'argent*, I will carry you money; *je vous estime fort*, I esteem you very much, &c. instead of *je porterai de l'argent à vous*, *j'estime vous fort*.

Se, for the dative or accusative of the reflexive personal pronoun *soi* singular and plural, when it refers to persons; as, *Pierre se donne des louanges*, Peter praises himself; *les femmes doivent s'instruire*, the women ought to instruct themselves, &c. instead of *Pierre donne des louanges à soi*, *les femmes doivent instruire elles-mêmes*; but when it refers to things, it cannot commonly be turned either by *soi*, *eux-mêmes*, or *elles-mêmes*; as *cette maison se détruit*, *ces fruits se mangent*, we can not say; *cette maison détruit soi*, nor *ces fruits mangent eux-mêmes*.

II. There are three, which are only put for the dative, viz. *lui*, *leur*, and *y*.

Lui, for the dative of the personals *lui*, and *elle*; as, *je lui dois du respect*, I owe him or her respect; it is as if I had said *je dois du respect à lui*, or *à elle*.

Leur,

Leur, plural of the conjunctive pronoun *lui*, for the dative of the personal pronouns plural *eux* and *elles*; as, *je leur fais grace*, I pardon them; as if I had said, *je fais grace à eux*, or *à elles*.

Y, more commonly stands instead of something mentioned before, than of the personal pronouns; as, *je m'y applique*, I apply myself to it, to that, &c. which is as if I had said, *je m'applique à cela*, *à cette chose*, or *à ces choses*.

III. There are three, which are only put for the accusative of the personal pronouns, or of some name; *viz. le, la, les*.

Le, for the personal pronoun *lui*, or something in the masculine spoken of before; as, *je le connois*, I know him; *vous le voyez*, you see him, or that; *vous le savez*, you know it, or that, &c. as if I had said *je connois lui*, *vous voyez, vous savez cela*, or *cette chose*.

La, for the personal pronoun *elle*, or something in the feminine already spoken of; as, *je la flatte*, I flatter her; *nous la considérons*, we consider it; as if I had said *je flatte elle*, *nous considérons cette chose*.

Les, for the personal pronouns *eux* and *elles*, or things formerly mentioned; as, *je les aime*, I love them; *il faut les rendre*, I must yield them, &c. as if I had said, *j'aime eux*, or *elles*; *il faut rendre ces choses*.

IV. There is one, *viz. en*, which commonly expresses a genitive, or ablative, masculine or feminine, singular or plural, and may be put instead of all the personal pronouns, or of any thing before spoken of; as in saying *j'en parle*, I may mean, according to the circumstances of the discourse, *je parle de moi*, *de nous*, *de toi*, *de vous*, *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *d'elles*, *de cela*, *de cette chose*, or *de ces choses*.

* * *En* is very often put for a noun in the nominative or accusative, when that noun would be preceded by a partitive article, if it was expressed; as when I say, in speaking of books, *il m'en est arrivé de Hollande*, some are arrived to me from *Holland*; it is as if I had said,

des livres me sont arrivés de Hollande; (or in speaking of money, j' en ai reçu, I have received some; it is as if I had said, j' ai reçu de l' argent.

R E M A R K S.

1. **N**OUS, vous, and lui, being also personal pronouns, may be thus distinguished.

When these pronouns have no article, when they come immediately before the verb in the arrangement of the discourse, though governed by it, and when their *English* is found after that of the verb, when they may be turned in any of the ways I have just now mentioned, they are conjunctive pronouns.

2. *Le, la, les*, are always articles, when joined to nouns; and conjunctive pronouns, when they are joined to verbs.

3. If a woman ought to say *j' ai été malade & je la suis encore*, or *je le suis encore*, I have been sick, and am so still; we shall give you the two following rules with examples from the best authors.

RULE I. The conjunctive pronoun *Le* is always indeclinable when it refers to one, or several nouns adjective, of whatever gender, and in whatever number they may be.

The marchioness de T—— in one of her letters says,
 „ *mon silence a pû vous donner lieu de penser que je*
 „ *n'étois pas aussi sensible, que je le suis au succès de vos*
 „ *travaux*, my silence may have given you ground to
 „ think that I was not so sensible as I am to the success
 „ of your toils, &c.” wherein *le* refers to the adjective *sensible*, which is feminine.

Father *Daniel*, in his history of *France*, when speaking of *Catharine of Medicis*, says, “ *Elle étoit jalouse de son*
 „ *autorité, & elle le devoit être*, she was jealous of her
 „ authority and she behoved to be so; in which *le* refers to to the adjective *jalouse*.

We

We read in a well known comedy, "*fut-il jamais une fille plus malheureuse & plus ridiculement traitée que je le suis?*" was there ever a girl more unfortunate, and more ridiculously used than I am?" wherein *le* refers to the adjectives *malheureuse* and *traitée*.

In one of the letters of the marchioness of — to the count of — we read, "*vous m'avez trouvé aimable, je cesse de vous le paroître*, you have found me amiable, I cease to appear so to you;" and in another, "*mais exempte de caprices, je ne le suis pas de soupçons*," but free from caprices, I am not so from suspicions," in which *le* in the first phrase refers to *exempte de caprices*.

RULE II. The conjunctive pronoun *Le*, makes *la* in the feminine singular, and *les* in the plural, as often as it refers to a noun substantive, if you say to any one *étoit ce là votre pensée*, was that your thought; he can very well reply, *pouvez-vous douter que ce ne la fut?* can you doubt that it was not? because *la* refers to the noun substantive *pensée*.

Also if you ask of a woman *êtes-vous madame une telle?* are you Mrs. such a one? or of an actress, *êtes-vous, Andromaque dans cette tragédie?* they may both answer, *oui, je la suis*, because *la* refers to the substantives *madame une telle* and *andromaque*.

In like manner if you ask me, *sont-ce là vos gens?* are these your people? I will answer *oui, ce les sont*, yes, they are; because *les* refers to the substantive *gens*, which is plural.

ARTICLE III.

Of the POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

THE possessive pronouns are so called; because they mark the possession, or the property of any thing.

H 2

They

They are of two kinds, viz. The *possessive absolute*, and the *possessive relative*. They are divided according to the three persons.

The *possessive absolute* for the three persons are.

For the first. *Mon, ma, mes, notre, nos.*

For the second. *Ton, ta, tes, votre, vos.*

For the third. *Son, sa, ses, leur, leurs.*

The *possessive relative* for the three persons are.

For the first. *Le mien, la mienne, le nôtre, la nôtre.*

For the second. *Le tien, la tienne, le vôtre, la vôtre.*

For the third. *Le sien, la sienne, le leur, la leur.*

* The above words are ranked among the pronouns as they supply the place of personal pronouns, or of nouns in the genitive; so *mon ouvrage*, my work; *notre devoir*, our duty; *ton habit*, thy coat; *votre maître*, your master; *son cheval*, his horse, &c. are as if I had said, *l'ouvrage de moi, le devoir de nous, l'habit de toi, le maître de nous, le cheval de lui, &c.*

The *possessive absolute* pronouns take the *indefinite article*, and the *possessive relative* the *definite*.

DECLENSION of the POSSESSIVE ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS, according to their Persons, with a Noun.

For the first.

Singular.

Masculine.

N. ac. *mon livre*, my book.

G. ab. *de mon livre*, of, or by my book.

Dat. *à mon livre*, to my book.

Feminine.

Ma plume, my pen.

de ma plume, of, or by my pen.

à ma plume, to my pen.

Plural.

N. ac. *mes livres*, my books.

G. ab. *de mes livres*, of, or by my books.

Dat. *à mes livres*, to my books.

Mes plumes, my pens.

de mes plumes, of, or by my pens.

à mes plumes, to my pens.

Singular.

*Singular.**Masculine.*N. ac. *notre frere*, our brother.G. ab. *de notre frere*, of, or by our brother.Dat. *à notre frere*, to our brother.*Feminine.*N. ac. *Notre sœur*, our sister.G. ab. *de notre sœur*, of, or by our sister.Dat. *à notre sœur*, to our sister.*Plural.*N. ac. *Nos freres*, our brothers.G. ab. *de nos freres*, of, or by our brothers.Dat. *à nos freres*, to our brothers.N. ac. *Nos sœurs*, our sisters.G. ab. *de nos sœurs*, of, or by our sisters.Dat. *à nos sœurs*, to our sisters.*Singular.**For the second.*N. ac. *ton ami*, thy friend.G. ab. *de ton ami*, of, or by thy friend.Dat. *à ton ami*, to thy friend.N. ac. *Ta maison*, thy house.G. ab. *de ta maison*, of, or by thy house.Dat. *à ta maison*, to thy house.*Plural.*N. ac. *tes amis*, thy friends.G. ab. *de tes amis*, of, or by thy friends.D. *à tes amis*, to thy friends.N. ac. *Tes maisons*, thy houses.G. ab. *de tes maisons*, of, or by thy houses.D. *à tes maisons*, to thy houses.*Singular.*N. ac. *votre lit*, your bed.G. ab. *de votre lit*, of, or by your bed.Dat. *à votre lit*, to your bed.N. ac. *Votre chambre*, your chamber.G. ab. *de votre chambre*, of, or by your chamber.Dat. *à votre chambre*, to your chamber.

*Mas.**Plural.**Fem.*

N. ac. <i>vos lits</i> , your beds.	<i>Vos chambres</i> , your chambers.
G. ab. <i>de vos lits</i> , of, or by your beds.	<i>de vos chambres</i> , of, or by your chambers.
Dat. <i>à vos lits</i> , to your beds.	<i>à vos chambres</i> , to your chambers.

*Singular.**For the third.*

N. ac. <i>son cousin</i> , his cousin.	<i>Sa cousine</i> , her cousin.
G. ab. <i>de son cousin</i> , of, or by his cousin.	<i>de sa cousine</i> , of, or by her cousin.
Dat. <i>à son cousin</i> , to his cousin.	<i>à sa cousine</i> , to her cousin.

Plural.

N. ac. <i>ses cousins</i> , his cousins.	<i>Ses cousines</i> , her cousins.
G. ab. <i>de ses cousins</i> , of, or by his cousins.	<i>de ses cousines</i> , of, or by her cousins.
Dat. <i>à ses cousins</i> , to his cousins.	<i>à ses cousines</i> , to her cousins.

Singular.

N. ac. <i>leur papier</i> , their paper.	<i>Leur table</i> , their table.
G. ab. <i>de leur papier</i> , of, or by their paper.	<i>de leur table</i> , of, or by their table.
Dat. <i>à leur papier</i> , to their paper.	<i>à leur table</i> , to their table.

Plural.

N. ac. <i>leurs papiers</i> , their papers.	<i>Leurs tables</i> , their tables.
G. ab. <i>de leurs papiers</i> , of, or by their papers.	<i>de leurs tables</i> , of, or by their tables.
Dat. <i>à leurs papiers</i> , to their papers.	<i>à leurs tables</i> , to their tables.

DECLENSION

DECLENSION of the POSSESSIVE RELATIVE PRONOUNS according to their Persons, without a Noun.

For the first.

Singulars.

Plurals.

Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
N. ac. <i>le mien, la mienne,</i> mine.		<i>Les miens, les miennes,</i> mine.	
G. ab. <i>du mien, de la mi-</i> <i>enne, of, or by mine.</i>		<i>des miens, des miennes, of,</i> <i>or by mine.</i>	
Dat. <i>au mien, à la mienne,</i> to mine.		<i>aux miens, aux miennes, to</i> <i>mine.</i>	
N. ac. <i>le nôtre, la nôtre,</i> ours.		<i>Les nôtres,</i> ours.	
G. ab. <i>du nôtre, de la nô-</i> <i>tre, of, or by ours.</i>		<i>des nôtres,</i> of, or by ours.	} common.
Dat. <i>au nôtre, à la nôtre,</i> to ours.		<i>aux nôtres,</i> to ours.	

For the second.

Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
N. ac. <i>le tien, la tienne,</i> thine.		<i>Les tiens, les tiennes, thine.</i> <i>des tiens, des tiennes, of, or</i> <i>by thine.</i>	
G. ab. <i>du tien, de la tien-</i> <i>ne, of, or by thine.</i>		<i>aux tiens, aux tiennes, to</i> <i>thine.</i>	
Dat. <i>au tien, à la tienne,</i> to thine.			
N. ac. <i>le vôtre, la vôtre,</i> yours.		<i>Les vôtres,</i> yours.	
G. ab. <i>du vôtre, de la vô-</i> <i>tre, of, or by yours.</i>		<i>des vôtres,</i> of, or by yours.	} common.
Dat. <i>au vôtre, à la vôtre,</i> to yours.		<i>aux vôtres,</i> to yours.	

For the third.

Singulars.

Mas. Fem.

N. ac. *le sien, la sienne*, his, hers.G. ab. *du sien, de la sienne*, of, or by his, hers.Dat. *au sien, à la sienne*, to his, to hers.

Plurals.

Mas. Fem.

Les *siens, les siennes*, his, hers.des *siens, des siennes*, of, or by his, hers.aux *siens, aux siennes*, to his, to hers.N. ac. *le leur, la leur*, theirs.G. ab. *du leur, de la leur*, of, or by theirs.Dat. *au leur, à la leur*, to theirs.Les *leurs*, theirs.des *leurs*, of, or by theirs.aux *leurs*, to theirs.

common.

R E M A R K S.

1. **T**HE *possessive absolute* pronouns always precede the noun to which they are joined, but the *possessive relative* not being joined to their substantives, suppose it mentioned before, and refer to it; as, *j'ai vendu mon cheval, avez-vous encore, le vôtre?* that is to say *votre cheval*. *Vous altérez votre santé, je conserve la mienne*, that is to say, *ma santé*.

2. Though we said in the preceding article that *leur* was always a conjunctive pronoun, when without an article, when joined to a verb, and when we can put *à eux*, or *à elles* in its stead: yet it is always a possessive pronoun when it has an article, or when it is joined to a noun, or that it supposes one which went before; as in *les maîtres à qui l'on confie de jeunes gens doivent leur donner toute leur attention*, the masters to whom we trust young people ought to give them all their attention; the first *leur* is a conjunctive pronoun, because it

it is without an article, and besides it is joined to the verb *donner*, and that we may put *à eux* in its stead, and say *doivent donner à eux*. The second *leur* is a possessive pronoun, because it is joined to the noun *attention*.

In this phrase, *quand vos freres viendront, je leur monterrâi ma bibliothèque, & j'espère qu'ils me montreront la leur*, when your brothers will come I will show them my library, and I hope they will show me theirs; the first *leur* is conjunctive, because it is joined to the verb *monterrâi*, and that it may be rendered by *à eux*; *je montrerâi à eux*. The second *leur* is possessive, because it has the article *la*, and refers to the noun *bibliothèque* coming before it, *ils me montreront leur bibliothèque*.

3. The *possessive pronouns* of the first and second persons always refer to persons: but those of the third, refer sometimes to persons and sometimes to things.

4. *Mon, ton, son* are used also with all nouns in the feminine beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. So instead of saying *ma ame*, my soul; *ta industrie*, thy industry; *sa espérance*, his hope; of which the pronunciation would be harsh and disagreeable they say *mon ame, ton industrie, son espérance*.

ARTICLE IV.

Of the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

THE *demonstrative pronouns* are so called; because they commonly serve to point out, or show the object spoken of, in a discourse.

These which join to nouns are: *ce, cet, cette, ces*, and these which are not joined to them are, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, with their plurals, and *ceci, cela*, which are of the common gender and have no plural.

* * The *demonstrative pronouns* are all of the third person, and are declined with the *indefinite article*.

These

These with a noun are thus declined.

Singular.

Masculine.

N. ac. *ce monde*, this world.

G. ab. *de ce monde*, of, or by this world.

Dat. *à ce monde*, to this world.

Masculine.

Cet amant, this lover.

de cet amant, of, or by this lover.

à cet amant, to this lover.

Plural.

N. ac. *ces mondes*, these worlds.

G. ab. *de ces mondes*, of, or by these worlds.

Dat. *à ces mondes*, to these worlds.

Ces amants, these lovers.

de ces amants, of, or by these lovers.

à ces amants, to these lovers.

* * * *Ce* is used before words in the masculine beginning with a consonant and *cet* before those which begin with a vowel or *h* mute.

Singular. Fem.

N. ac. *cette fille*, this, or that girl.

G. ab. *de cette fille*, of, or by this, or that girl.

Dat. *à cette fille*, to this, or that girl.

Without a noun.

Singular.

Mas. Fem.

N. ac. *celui, celle*, he, she.

G. ab. *de celui, de celle*, of, or by him, her.

Dat. *à celui, à celle*, to him, to her.

N. ac. *celui-ci, celle-ci*, this one.

G. ab. *de celui-ci, de celle-ci*, of, or by this one.

Dat. *à celui-ci, à celle-ci*, to this one.

Plural.

Ces filles, these girls.

de ces filles, of, or by these girls.

à ces filles, to these girls.

Plural.

Mas. Fem.

Ceux, celles, those.

de ceux, de celles, of, or by those.

à ceux, à celles, to those.

Ceux-ci, celles-ci, those,

de ceux-ci, de celles-ci, of, or by those.

à ceux-ci, à celles-ci, to those.

N.

N. ac. <i>celui-là, celle-là,</i>	<i>Ceux-là, celles-là,</i> those.
that one.	
G. ab. <i>de celui-là, de celle-là,</i>	<i>de ceux-là, de celles-là,</i> of,
of, or by that one.	or by those.
Dat. <i>à celui-là, à celle-là,</i>	<i>à ceux-là, à celles-là,</i> to
to that one.	those.
Singular. Plural.	
N. ac. <i>ceci,</i> this.	<i>Cela,</i> that.
G. ab. <i>de ceci,</i> of, or by this.	<i>de cela,</i> of, or by that.
Dat. <i>à ceci,</i> to this.	<i>à cela,</i> to that.

R E M A R K S.

THE above pronouns are used in discourse, according to the different ways they point out the things of which we speak.

1. *Ce, cet, cette,* and *ces,* are always put before nouns substantive of persons or things, sometimes preceded, or followed by their adjectives: (except *ce*, which is often put before other words) and then they become a kind of adjectives, by the help of which, objects are placed as under our eyes, as when I say *ce ciel,* this heaven; *cette terre,* this earth; *ces éléments sont l'ouvrage de Dieu,* these elements are the work of God.

2. When we want to point out objects more or less distant, we put *ci* and *là* after the nouns substantive to which they are joined. *Ci* to mark the object near at hand, and *là* the one more distant; as, *ce pays-ci,* this country; *cet homme-ci,* this man; *cette chambre-ci,* this chamber; *ces livres-ci,* these books, &c. *ce pays-là,* that country; *cet homme-là,* that man; *cette chambre-là,* that chamber; *ces livres-là,* these books, &c.

When *ce* is not joined to a noun substantive, it is relative,

1. To what precedes in the discourse, and points out the person, or thing spoken of before; as when I say,

je lis Homere & Pindare ; parce que ce sont les meilleurs poëtes Greques, I read Homer and Pindar ; because they are the best Greek poets. Les astronomes qui prétendent connoître la nature des étoiles fixes, assurent que ce sont autant de soleils, the astronomers who pretend to know the nature of the fixed stars, assure that they are so many suns. Ce, in the first example, refers to Homer and Pindar ; and, in the second, to étoiles fixes.

2. It is *relative* to what follows in the discourse, and points out the person or thing we are going to speak of; as when I say, *c'étoit un grand capitaine que César*, Cesar was a great captain; *c'est ne pas connoître les courtisans que de compter sur leurs promesses*, it is not to know courtiers to rely on their promises. *Ce* in the first example refers to *César*; and, in the second, to *compter sur leurs promesses*: however, on several occasions wherein *ce* is relative to what follows, it is only used for elegance, and to give more force and energy to the expression; for when I say, *Ce fut l'envie qui occasionna le premier meurtre dans le monde*, it was envy that occasioned the first murder in the world; it is as if I had said, *l'envie occasionna le premier meurtre dans le monde*.

3. *Ce* is often put for the general word *chose*, of which the signification is restrained and determined by the words which follow it; and these are commonly the relative pronouns *qui, quoi, dont, &c.* as, *faites attention à ce que vous m'avez promis*, give attention to that which you have promised me; that is to say, *à la chose que vous m'avez promise*, to the thing, &c. *on ne doit s'appliquer qu'à ce qui peut être utile*, one ought not to apply himself but to that which may be useful; that is to say, *à la chose, or aux choses qui peuvent être utiles, &c.* to the thing, or to the things which may be useful.

When *ce* is not joined to a substantive, it does not change its termination, although it refers to nouns masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

3. *Celui,*

3
to n
of P
dete
pron
sa c
his
les f
la Je
pine
only
ceux
happ
4.
rals,
of th
com
has
of tw
most
the n
celle
5.
comm
ette
que
chose
chose
T
the n
expre
ideas.

3. *Celui*, and *celle*, with their plurals, are never joined to nouns substantive, as they have a vague signification of persons, or things, which ought to be explained and determined by the following words, without which these pronouns cannot stand in a discourse; as, *celui qui met sa confiance en Dieu, ne sera pas trompé*, he who places his confidence in God, will not be deceived; *de toutes les félicités, celle dont les justes jouissent dans le ciel est la seule à laquelle nous devons aspirer*, of all the happinesses, that of which the just enjoy in heaven is the only one to which we ought to aspire; *bien-heureux sont ceux qui souffrent persécution pour Jésus-Christ*, very happy are those who suffer persécution for Jesus Christ.

4. *Celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *celui-là*, *celle-là*, with their plurals, have a determinate signification, and independant of the words by which they may be followed. They commonly point out an object as under our eyes, or that has already been spoken of, as when I say, in speaking of two men, *celui-ci est le plus habile*, this one is the most knowing; *celui-là est le plus ignorant*, that one is the most ignorant; and in speaking of houses, *je préfère celle-ci, à celle-là, &c.* I prefer this one, to that one, &c.

5. *Ceci*, and *cela*, only speak of things, and *ceci* may commonly be rendered by *cette chose-ci*, and *cela* by *cette chose là*. So when I say, *ceci mérite attention: que pensez-vous de cela?* it is as if I had said, *cette chose-ci mérite attention: que pensez-vous de cette chose là? &c.*

ARTICLE V.

Of the RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

THE *relative pronouns* are so called, on account of the relation, or reference, which they have to the nouns or pronouns which precede them, and which express the persons, or things of which they recall the ideas.

The

The relative pronouns are,

Qui, que, quoi, dont, of both genders and numbers;
lequel, masculine; *laquelle*, feminine.

The *relative pronouns* have two principal uses in discourse, according to which they are either *explicative* or *determinative*.

I. They are *explicative*, when the words which follow them, and which depend on them, only unfold what was comprehended in the *idea* of the nouns or pronouns to which the relative pronouns refer, without changing any thing in them, and what is added by the help of the relative pronouns, to the preceding *ideas*, agrees to them in general, and in their full extent. So in *Dieu qui aime les hommes*, God who loves men; what is expressed by *qui aime les hommes*, only explains what is comprehended in the *idea* of God, who cannot be conceived without the attribute of kindness to men. Likewise in *les hommes qui sont créés pour connoître & pour aimer Dieu*, men who are created to know and love God; what is added to the *idea* of *hommes*, by the words depending on *qui*, agrees to that *idea* in general, and in its full extent, as there is not a man who was not created to know and to love God. Consequently *qui*, in both examples, serves to explain the meaning.

II. They are *determinative*, when they are used to restrain and determine the signification of the nouns or pronouns, to which they refer, that is to say, when that which is added to an *idea*, by the help of the relative pronouns, does not agree to that *idea* in its full extent. So in *les hommes qui craignent Dieu*, the men who fear God; the pronoun *qui* sufficiently shows, that I do not speak of all men, but only of the small number of those who fear God. Consequently *qui* is *determinative*.

What I have said of *qui* may also be applied to the other relative pronouns.

The

T
artic
finite
ner t

DEC

Sing

N. S

G. ab

of,

Dat.

Ac. q

M

N, Leg

G. ab

or d

or v

Dat. a

whic

Ac. leg

whic

1. T

qui aim

anteced

the mor

dent of

2. N

relative

persons

to them,

The *relative pronouns* are declined with the *indefinite article*, except *lequel* and *laquelle*, which take the *definite*; and that article is joined to it in such a manner that it makes part of the word.

DECLENSION of the RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular and Plural.

N. *Qui*, who.
G. ab. *de qui*, or *dont*,
of, or by whom.
Dat. *à qui*, to whom.
Ac. *qui*, or *que*, whom.

Singular.

Mas. Fem.

N. *Lequel, laquelle*, which.
G. ab. *duquel, de laquelle*,
or *dont*, of, or by which,
or what.
Dat. *auquel, à laquelle*, to
which, or what.
Ac. *lequel, laquelle*, or *que*,
which, or what.

Singular and Plural.

N. ac. *Quoi*, or *que*, what.
G. ab. *de quoi*, or *dont*,
of, or by what.
Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

Plural.

Mas. Fem.

Lesquels, lesquelles, which.
desquels, desquelles, or
dont, of, or by which,
or what.
auxquels, auxquelles, to
which, or what.
lesquels, lesquelles, or *que*,
which, or what.

R E M A R K S.

1. **T**HE noun, or pronoun, to which the relative refers, is called its antecedent. So in *Dieu qui aime les hommes*, God who loves men; *Dieu* is the antecedent of *qui*; and in *l'argent que j'ai dépensé*; the money which I have spent; *l'argent* is the antecedent of *que*.

2. Nouns substantive can only be antecedents to the relative pronouns, as they only express the *ideas* of persons and things. Pronouns may also be antecedents to them, but then they supply the place of some nouns substantive,

substantive, either already expressed or understood; as, in *il est étonnant que Henri quatre ait été la victime d'un scélérat*, *Lui qui n'étoit occupé que du bonheur de ses peuples*, It is astonishing that Henry IV. was the victim of a wretch, He who was only busied with the happiness of his people; *Lui*, antecedent of *qui* stands instead of *Henri quatre*, expressed before; and in *celui qui veut vivre heureux, doit domter ses passions*, He who would live happy ought to conquer his passions; wherein *celui* the antecedent of *qui* is put for *l'homme*; *l'homme qui veut vivre heureux*, &c. the man who would live happy, &c.

3. You will find the antecedent of a relative pronoun in turning it by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c. according to the case wherein it is, and by joining to it a noun expressed before, with which it can make a reasonable sense. So in *songeons à appaiser la colere de Dieu, dont nous devons craindre les effets*, let us think on appeasing the wrath of God, of which we ought to dread the effects; you find that it is *la colere*, and not *Dieu*, that is the antecedent of *dont*, because we may say *songeons à appaiser la colere de Dieu, de laquelle colere nous devons craindre les effets*, let us think on appeasing the wrath of God, of which wrath we ought to dread the effects; and that we could not say *duquel Dieu nous devons craindre les effets*, of which God we ought to dread the effects.

4. There are some occasions wherein *qui* and *quoi* have no antecedent either expressed or understood, and then *qui* may generally be turned by *quelle personne*, and *quoi* by *quelle chose*; as, *je vous ferai connoître qui je suis*, I will let you know who I am; that is to say *quelle personne je suis*, what person I am; *on ne fait encore à quoi attribuer sûrement la chute des corps pesants*, it is not yet known with certainty to what to attribute the fall of heavy bodies; that is to say *à quelle chose attribuer sûrement la chute des corps pesants*, to what thing to attribute with certainty the fall of heavy bodies.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE VI.

Of the ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

THE *absolute pronouns*, considered by expression, are, for the most part, the same with those which, in the preceding article, we called *relative*; but they differ in signification, and take no antecedent, as the *relative* always do.

They are, *qui, que* and *quoi; quel, quelle, lequel, laquelle*, and are declined with the *indefinite article*, except *lequel* and *laquelle*, which take the *definite*.

DECLENSION of the ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

M. and F. Sing. and Plur.		M. Sing. and Plur.	
N. <i>Qui</i> , who.	}	N. ac. <i>Quoi</i> , or <i>que</i> , what.	}
G. ab. <i>de qui</i> , of, or by whom.		G. ab. <i>de quoi</i> , of, or by what.	
Dat. <i>à qui</i> , to whom.		D. <i>à quoi</i> , to what.	
Ac. <i>qui</i> , or <i>que</i> , whom, what.		-----	

Singular.

Plural.

Mas. Fem.		Mas. Fem.	
N. ac. <i>Quel, quelle</i> , which, what.	}	<i>Quels, quelles</i> , which, what.	}
G. ab. <i>de quel, de quelle</i> , of, or by which, what.		<i>de quels, de quelles</i> , of, or by which, what.	
Dat. <i>à quel, à quelle</i> , to, which, what.		<i>à quels, à quelles</i> , to which, what.	

Singular.		Plural.	
Mas.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
N. ac. <i>Lequel, laquelle,</i> which, what.		<i>Lesquels, lesquelles,</i> which, what.	
G. ab. <i>duquel, de laquelle,</i> of, or by which, what.		<i>desquels, desquelles,</i> of, or or by which, what.	
Dat. <i>au quel, à laquelle,</i> to which, what.		<i>auxquels, auxquelles,</i> to which, what.	

R E M A R K S.

1. **T**HE *absolute pronouns* are commonly used in such phrases as express *doubt, uncertainty* and *ignorance*, and if they are used sometimes in expressions which mark *knowledge*, or *certainty*, that knowledge is never distinctly expressed; and the object of which the absolute pronoun supplies the place, remains always to be specified in a clear and determinate manner.

Of all the phrases which, with the absolute pronouns express *doubt, uncertainty* and *ignorance*, the most ordinary, in discourse, are those which ask a question, which is the reason why the most part of *Grammarians* have called them *interrogative*.

2. The absolute *qui*, in all its cases only speaks of persons, and may always be turned by *quelle personne*; as, *je devine, qui, ou quelle personne vous a mal parlé de moi*, I guess who, or what person has spoken evil to you of me; *à qui, ou à quelle personne dois-je demander conseil?* of whom, or what person must I ask counsel?

Qui est-ce qui, with interrogation, is used instead of *qui*; as, *qui est-ce qui est venu?* Who is come? or without interrogation; as, *dites-moi qui est-ce qui est venu*, tell me who is come; then the first *qui* is absolute, the second relative, and has the first for its antecedent, as if

if I had said *qui est venu*, or *quelle est la personne qui est venue?*

3. *Que*, only speaks of things, and may always be rendered by *quelle chose*; as, *je ne sais que vous-offrir*, I know not what to offer you; that is to say, *quelle chose vous offrir*: *que souhaitez-vous de moi?* what do you want with me? that is to say, *quelle chose souhaitez-vous de moi?* &c.

Qu' est-ce que, is often put instead of *que*, especially in asking a question; so *qu' est-ce que vous craignez?* what do you fear? may be turned by *que craignez-vous?* and then the first *que* is absolute, the second relative, and has the first for its antecedent. *Qu' est-ce que*, being used in phrases without interrogation, can only be turned by *quelle chose*, or *ce que*; as, *je ne sais qu' est-ce que vous avez fait au lieu d'étudier*, I know not what you have done instead of studying; that is to say, *je ne sais quelle chose vous avez faite*, or *ce que vous avez fait au lieu d'étudier*.

4. *Quoi*, only speaks of things, and may be turned by *quelle chose*; as, *je sais de quoi il est capable*, I know of what he is capable; that is to say, *de quelle chose il est capable*; *à quoi vous occupez-vous?* at what do you occupy yourself? that is to say, *à quelle chose vous occupez-vous?* &c.

5. *Quel, quelle*, speaks equally of persons and things in both numbers, and always supposes a substantive to which it refers, and of which it borrows the gender and number.

6. *Lequel, laquelle*, considered as absolute, speaks both of persons and things, and whether used with interrogation, or without it, it stands instead of *quel, quelle*, and its substantive. If after having spoken of houses, I say, *laquelle avez-vous achetée?* which have you bought? It is as if I had said, *quelle maison avez-vous achetée?* which house have you bought? and if after having spoken of books, I say, *je vois au quel vous donnez la préférence*, I see to which you give the preference; it is as if I had said, *je vois à quel livre vous donnez la préférence*, &c.

7. *Où, d'où, and par où*, may be looked upon as absolute pronouns, when they supply the place of *quoi* without an antecedent, and when they may be turned by *quelle chose*, or by *quel*, with any substantive; as, *où allez-vous?* where are you going? that is to say, *en quel lieu allez-vous?* *où aspirez-vous?* to what do you aspire? that is to say, *à quoi*, or *à quelle chose aspirez-vous?* *d'où venez-vous?* from whence do you come? that is to say, *de quel lieu venez-vous?* *par où passerons-nous?* that is to say, *par quel lieu passerons-nous?* &c.

§§ *Qui, que, quoi* and *lequel, laquelle*, being sometimes relative, and sometimes absolute pronouns are thus distinguished.

1. *Qui, que* and *quoi* are always relative, when they may be turned by *lequel* and *laquelle*; and on the contrary, when *qui* can be rendered by *quelle personne*, *que* and *quoi* by *quelle chose*, they are absolute pronouns.

When *que* cannot be turned either by *lequel* or *laquelle*, or by *quelle chose*, it is a conjunction.

2. *Lequel* and *laquelle*, with their cases, are absolute, when they may be rendered by *quel* and *quelle*, joined to substantives.

ARTICLE VII.

Of the INDEFINITE or INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

THE *indefinite* or *indeterminate* pronouns are so called; because they commonly express their object in an indeterminate manner. They are also called *improper*, as there are several of them which may as properly be called adjectives as pronouns.

They

They are divided into four kinds, viz.

I. Those used instead of nouns; as, *quiconque*, who-soever; *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, any one, some one; *chacun*, *chacune*, every one, each; *autrui*, others; *personne*, no man, no woman, with the negative *ne*; but without it, it signifies any one or some one; *rien*, nothing when accompanied with the negative *ne*; but without it, it signifies any thing, or something; *l'un l'autre*, one another, both.

§§ The above pronouns take the *indefinite article*, except *rien*, and *l'un l'autre*, which take the definite.

II. Those used as adjectives; as, *quelque*, some; *chaque*, every, each; *certain*, *certaine*, certain; *quelconque*, whoever, whatever.

§*§ They take the *indefinite article*.

III. Those used sometimes as pronouns, and sometimes as adjectives; as, *nul*, *nulle*, nobody; *aucun*, *aucune*, nobody; *pas un*, nobody, any one; *autre*, other, otherways; *l'un & l'autre*, both; *même*, itself, even; *tel*, *telle*, such; *plusieurs*, many; *tout*, *toute*, all, every, every thing.

§§† They take the *indefinite article*, except *autre*, which takes any article, and *l'un & l'autre*, which takes the definite.

IV. Those accompanied by *que*, and which with it, have a particular signification; as, *quique ce soit*, or sometimes, *qui que ce fût*, without a negation, signifies who-soever, whatever; but with the negative *ne*, it signifies nobody, any body; *quoi que ce soit*, or sometimes *quoi que ce fût*, without a negation, and followed by *que*, or *qui*, signifies whatever; but with it, it signifies nothing; *quel que*, whoever, whatever; *quoi que*, whatever; *quelque* - - - *que*, *tout* - - - *que*.

* * * They take the *indefinite article*, except *quelque*, which takes none.

R E M A R K S.

QUICONQUE always comprehends a relative with its antecedent; it is commonly masculine, and has no plural.

Quelqu'un, quelqu'une, makes *quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, in the plural.

Chacun, chacune, has no plural.

Autrui, never joins with an adjective, is properly of no gender, has no plural, and is used with propriety only in the genitive, dative, and ablative cases.

Personne, is sometimes an indefinite pronoun, and sometimes a noun substantive. When pronoun, it is masculine, has no plural, and is used either with a negation or without it; without a negation, it is used in expressions of doubt, uncertainty, and interrogation, and may be rendered by *aucun*, or *quelqu'un*: but when substantive, it has the plural, and is declined with the definite article, *la, les, or une, des*.

Rien, when indefinite pronoun is used with, or without a negation, is masculine, and has no plural. When accompanied with *ne*, it is seldom used but in expressions of doubt, uncertainty, or interrogation. Sometimes it is a pure substantive, and signifies *the nothing, or a nothing*, has a plural, and takes the article *le* or *un*; as, *le rien*, the nothing; *un rien*, a nothing; *des riens*, nothings, &c.

L'un l'autre, are of both genders and numbers, and are used separately or together; when together they mutually mark several objects, and then the first remains always in the nominative, and the second is in another case, sometimes preceded by a preposition: but when used separately, they mark the division of several objects.

On

On the SECOND KIND.

Quelque, in the singular marks an indeterminate person or thing in the plural; an indeterminate number of persons or things, and is of both genders.

Chaque, is of both genders, and has no plural.

3. *Certain*, when pronoun marks an indeterminate person or thing, often signifies *some*, has the two numbers, and takes the indefinite article, or *un*, *une*: sometimes it is a pure adjective, then it signifies *sure* or *certain*, and is commonly put after its substantive; as, *un état certain*, *une nouvelle certaine*.

Quelconque, is only used by scriveners; as, *non-obstant opposition, ou appellation quelconque, &c.*

On the THIRD KIND.

Nul, *aucun*, *pas un*, with their feminines, when accompanied with *ne*, signify nearly the same thing: however *nul* seems to have a more negative force than the others, is the only one that can be used with a reference to any thing that precedes it in the discourse, and then it signifies *nobody*, and is only used in the nominative singular masculine.

Aucun, has commonly a reference to the persons or things spoken of before, sometimes its signification is restrained by a noun, or pronoun following it in the genitive, and on some occasions, you may use indifferently *nul*, or *aucun*, in the same signification; as, *nulle* or *aucune de vous ne peut se plaindre de ma conduite*, none of you can complain of my conduct.

Pas un, is always used like *aucun* in a restrained and relative signification; but *pas un* marks an exclusion more general than *aucun*; and, in expressions of doubt or interrogation, *aucun* is sometimes put without a negation, and then it may be rendered by *quelqu'un*.

* * * The forefaid three pronouns are commonly uſed only in the ſingular; and when they are joined to nouns ſubſtantive, may then be regarded as adjectives.

† *Nul*, ſignifying null or void, is adjective; as, *ce teſtament eſt nul*, that teſtament is null; *ces procédures ont été déclarées nulles*; theſe procedures have been declared void, &c.

§ *Aucun* and *pas un*, preceded by *en*, to which they refer as to their ſubſtantive, ought to be regarded as adjectives, as in, *De toutes les nations de la terre, il n'y en a aucune qui n'ait une idée au moins confuſe de la divinité*, of all the nations of the earth, there is not one that has not, at leaſt, a confuſed idea of the divinity, &c.

Autre, is of both genders and numbers, and diſtinguiſhes perſons or things. When it is not joined to a ſubſtantive, or when it does not refer to *en*, it is pronoun; but when joined to a ſubſtantive, or preceded by *en* to which it refers as to its ſubſtantive, it is adjective. Sometimes it ſignifies *different*; as, *un voyageur rapporte ſouvent les choſes tout autres qu'elles ne ſont*, a traveller often relates things quite different from what they are; that is to ſay, *toutes différentes de ce qu'elles ſont*.

L'un & l'autre, are of both genders and numbers, and are ſometimes uſed without any ſubſtantive expreſſed.

4. *Même*, is of both genders and numbers, and when uſed as an adjective it has three different uſes.

1. It is often put immediately after nouns ſubſtantive, and the moſt part of pronouns to give them more force and energy; as, *le roi-même*, the king himſelf; *nous-mêmes*, ourſelves, &c.

2. It implies identity; as, *c' eſt le même ſoleil qui éclaire toutes les nations de la terre*, it is the ſame ſun that illuminates all the nations of the earth, &c.

3. It

3. It marks that the thing of which we speak is *equal to, or like another*; in which case it may be turned by *égal*, or *semblable*; as, *il est rare de trouver deux personnes du même caractère*, it is uncommon to find two persons of the *same or like* character, &c.

Tel, when put for *celui*, or when it stands for a person whom we do not name is pronoun; but on all other occasions it is adjective, and marks the comparison of a person or thing with another, without expressing by itself, in what that person or thing is compared; as, *un homme tel que vous devoit avoir plus de soin de sa réputation*, a man like you ought to have more care of his reputation; *tel il a été, tel il sera toujours*, such he has been, such he will always be; *telle vie, telle mort*, such life, such death, &c.

Plusieurs, is of both genders and has no singular. When it does not take a substantive after it, it is pronoun; but when it does, it is adjective. It is pronoun in, *plusieurs ont cru le monde éternel*, many have thought the world eternal; and adjective in *on ne réussit guere en s'appliquant à plusieurs sciences à la fois*, one seldom succeeds by applying to too many sciences at once.

Tout, considered as a pronoun is only used in the singular masculine, and signifies *every thing*; but when adjective and in the singular, it signifies *all*, and sometimes *every*; as in, *tout le pays est inondé*, all the country is overflowed; *toute la ville est en larmes*, all the city is in tears; *tout homme est mortel*, every man is mortal, &c.

In the plural; it not only signifies *every*, but it also marks that we want to speak of all the subjects contained in an *idea*; as, *tous les hommes sont morts en Adam*, every man is dead in Adam, &c.

On the FOURTH KIND.

Qui que ce soit, and sometimes *qui que ce fût*, is only used in the singular masculine.

Quoi que ce soit, and sometimes *quoi que ce fût* is only used in the singular masculine also.

Quel que, serves to mark an object, either in itself, or by its nature and qualities; but in such a way as shows that we do not give any particular attention to it; as, *les criminels doivent être punis*, *quels qu'ils puissent être*, criminals ought to be punished whoever they be; *quel que soit le bonheur des grands de la terre, un chrétien doit s'en proposer un plus solide*, whatever be the happiness of the great ones of the earth, a christian ought to propose to himself one more solid, &c.

Quel que is of both numbers, has no article and is only used in the nominative.

Quoi que, is masculine and has no plural. It is often better for the sake of harmony and perspicuity, to use *quelque chose que* in its stead.

C H A P. VIII.

Of VERBS.

THE *verb* is a word, that judges and affirms, marking the being, the action, or the suffering of any person or thing, with the difference of moods, times, numbers and persons.

Verbs may be divided into two general kinds, *viz.*

I. The *substantive verb être*, to be; which only marks an affirmation, without any attribute; as the noun
substantive

substantive only signifies the object without regard to its qualities.

II. The *adjective verbs*, which contain the attribute with the affirmation; as the nouns adjective express the object as vested with some quality. That of which we affirm any thing, is called the *subject*, and that which we affirm concerning it, is called the *attribute*.

We shall divide the adjective verbs into five classes, viz.

1. The *Active*, which mark that the action passes out of the subject that is its principal; as, *aimer*, to love; *travailler*, to work, &c.

2. The *Neuter*, which mark the action without any exterior motion, or if they do, that motion does not go out of the subject that acts; as, *dormir*, to sleep; *pâlir*, to become pale; *languir*, to languish, &c.

3. The *Passive*, which mark the receiving the effect of an action, produced by some other subject; as, *il est aimé*, he is loved, &c.

4. The *Reflected* and *Reciprocal*, the first of which mark, that the subject which acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time either the subject or the object of the action; as, *je me blesse*, I hurt myself; *je me connois*, I know myself, &c. Philosophers call it *immanent action*. The second mark the action of two, or many subjects which act upon one another; as, *ils se battent tous deux*, they both fight; *nous nous aimons les uns les autres*, we love one another, &c.

5. The *Impersonal*, which are only used in the third person singular.

Note. Besides the above, there are two others, called *Auxiliary*, as no verb can be conjugated without them. They are *avoir*, to have; and *être*, to be.

ARTICLE I.

Of the different CONJUGATIONS of VERBS, their Moods, Times, or Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

TO conjugate a verb, is to repeat it, with all the variations of which it is susceptible.

There are four conjugations in *French*, which are distinguished by the different terminations of their infinitives.

The 1st ends	} the	{	in <i>er</i> ; as, <i>chanter</i> , to sing.
The 2d ends			in <i>ir</i> ; as, <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The 3d ends			in <i>oir</i> ; as, <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The 4th ends			in <i>re, dre, tre</i> , and <i>pre</i> ; as, <i>dire</i> , to say.

Rendre, to restore; *bâtre*, to fight, &c.

VERBS have four MOODS, viz.

1. The *Indicative* which indicates an action in a direct and positive manner.

2. The *Imperative*, which commands, beseeches, or exhorts.

3. The *Subjunctive* or *conjunctive*, so called, because it is always used after other words, on which it depends.

4. The *Infinitive*, which only expresses the action, or signification of the verb in an indefinite and indeterminate manner.

Verbs have three *simple* or *natural times* or *tenses*, viz. The *present*, *past*, and *future*. To the first of these belongs the *conditional present*. To the second belong the *imperfect*, *preterite*, *preter-indefinite*; first, *preter-pluperfect*, second, *preter-pluperfect*, and the *conditional past*. To the last the *future past*.

In verbs, as in nouns, there are two numbers, viz. the singular and the plural; which are distinguished by the

the nouns, or personal pronouns which precede them, or by their different terminations.

There are three persons in each number.

Singular.

1. *Je*, I.
2. *tu*, thou.
3. *Il*, he; *elle*, she; or *on*, one, any one, &c.

} of both genders.

Plural.

1. *Nous*, we.
2. *vous*, ye, or you.
3. *Ils*, *elles*, they.

} of both genders.

vide, pages 91 and 92.

VERBS have two PARTICIPLES.

The present ends always in *ant*, and is *active*.

The other is ended according to the difference of the conjugation, and is *passive*.

We shall now proceed to the conjugation of the two auxiliaries.

AVOIR, to have.

Participles.

Ayant, having. } *active*.

Eu, had. } *passive*.

Indicative MOOD.

Present.

Singulars.

1. *J'ai*, I have.
2. *tu as*, thou hast.
3. *il*, or *elle a*, he, or she has.

Plurals.

1. *Nous avons*, we have.
2. *vous avez*, ye, or you have.
3. *ils*, or *elles ont*, they have.

Imperfect.

1. *J'avois*, I had.
2. *tu avois*, thou hadst.
3. *il*, or *elle avoit*, he, or she had.

1. *Nous avions*, we had.
2. *vous aviez*, ye, or you had.
3. *ils*, or *elles avoient*, they had.

Preterite.

Preterite.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>J'eus</i> , I had. | 1. <i>Nous eûmes</i> , we had. |
| 2. <i>tu eus</i> , thou hadst. | 2. <i>vous eûtes</i> , ye, or you had. |
| 3. <i>il</i> , or <i>elle eut</i> , he, or she had. | 3. <i>ils</i> , or <i>elle eurent</i> , they had. |

Preter-indefinite.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>J'ai eu</i> , I have had. | 1. <i>Nous avons eu</i> , we have had. |
| 2. <i>tu as eu</i> , thou hast had. | 2. <i>vous avez eu</i> , ye have had. |
| 3. <i>il</i> , or <i>elle a eu</i> , he, or she has had. | 3. <i>ils</i> , or <i>elles ont eu</i> , they have had. |

First Preter-pluperfect.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>J'avois eu</i> , I had had. | 1. <i>Nous avions eu</i> , we had had. |
| 2. <i>tu avois eu</i> , thou hadst had. | 2. <i>vous aviez eu</i> , ye had had. |
| 3. <i>il</i> , or <i>elle avoit eu</i> , he, or she had had. | 3. <i>ils</i> , or <i>elles avoient eu</i> , they had had. |

Second Preter-pluperfect.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>J'eus eu</i> , I had had. | 1. <i>Nous eûmes eu</i> , we had had. |
| 2. <i>tu eus eu</i> , thou hadst had. | 2. <i>vous eûtes eu</i> , ye had had. |
| 3. <i>il</i> , or <i>elle eut eu</i> , he, or she had had. | 3. <i>ils</i> , or <i>elles eurent eu</i> , they had had. |

*Future.**Singulars.*

1. *J'aurai*, I shall, or will have.
2. *tu auras*, thou shalt, or wilt have.
3. *il*, or *elle aura*, he, or she shall, or will have.

Plurals.

1. *Nous aurons*, we shall, or will have.
2. *vous aurez*, ye shall, or will have.
3. *ils*, or *elles auront*, they shall, or will have.

Future

Future Past.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>J'aurai eu</i> , I will have had.
2. <i>tu auras eu</i> , thou wilt have had.
3. <i>il, or elle aura eu</i> , he, or she will have had. | 1. <i>Nous aurons eu</i> , we will have had.
2. <i>vous aurez eu</i> , ye will have had.
3. <i>ils, or elles auront eu</i> , they will have had. |
|---|--|

Conditional Present.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>J'aurois</i> , I would have.
2. <i>tu aurois</i> , thou wouldst have.
3. <i>il, or elle auroit</i> , he, or she would have. | 1. <i>Nous aurions</i> , we would have.
2. <i>vous auriez</i> , ye would have.
3. <i>ils, or elles auroient</i> , they would have. |
|---|--|

Conditional Past.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>J'aurois, or j'eusse eu</i> , I should have had.
2. <i>tu aurois, or tu eusses eu</i> , thou shouldst have had.
3. <i>il, or elle auroit, or eut eu</i> , he, or she should have had. | 1. <i>Nous aurions, or nous eussions eu</i> , we should have had.
2. <i>vous auriez, or vous eussiez eu</i> , ye should have had.
3. <i>ils, or elles auroient, or eussent eu</i> , they should have had. |
|---|---|

*Imperative MOOD.**Present or Future.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. - - - - -
2. <i>Aie</i> , have thou.
3. <i>Qu'il, or qu'elle ait</i> , let him or her have. | 1. <i>Ayons</i> , let us have.
2. <i>ayez</i> , have ye.
3. <i>qu'ils, or qu'elles aient</i> , let them have. |
|--|---|

Subjunctive.

Subjunctive, or Conjunctive MOOD.

Present, or Future.

Singulars.

1. *Que j'aie*, that I may have.
2. *que tu aies*, that thou mayest have.
3. *qu'il*, or *qu'elle ait*, that he, or she may have.

Plurals.

1. *Que nous ayions*, that we may have.
2. *que vous ayiez*, that ye may have.
3. *qu'ils*, or *qu'elles aient*, that they may have.

Imperfect.

1. *Que j'eusse*, that I might have.
2. *que tu eusses*, that thou mightest have.
3. *qu'il*, or *qu'elle eût*, that he, or she might have.

1. *Que nous eussions*, that we might have.
2. *que vous eussiez*, that ye might have.
3. *qu'ils*, or *qu'elles eussent*, that they might have.

Preterite.

1. *Que j'aie eu*, that I may have had.
2. *que tu aies eu*, that thou mayest have had.
3. *qu'il*, or *qu'elle ait eu*, that he, or she may have had.

1. *Que nous ayions eu*, that we may have had.
2. *que vous ayiez eu*, that ye may have had.
3. *qu'ils*, or *qu'elles aient eu*, that they may have had.

Preterpluperfect.

1. *Que j'eusse eu*, that I might have had.
2. *que tu eusses eu*, that thou mightest have had.
3. *qu'il*, or *qu'elle eût eu*, that he, or she might have had.

1. *Que nous eussions eu*, that we might have had.
2. *que vous eussiez eu*, that ye might have had.
3. *qu'ils*, or *qu'elles eussent eu*, that they might have had.

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. *Avoir*, to have.Preterite. *Avoir eu*, to have had.

Participle

*Participle active.*Present. *Ayant*, having.Preterite. *Ayant eu*, having had.*Participle passive.*Present. *Eu*, *mas. eue*, *fem. had.**Gerund.**Ayant*, having.*Etre*, to be.*Participles.**étant*, being, } *Active.**été*, been. } *Passive.**Indicative MOOD.**Present.**Singulars.**Je suis*, I am.*tu es*, thou art.*il est*, he is.*Plurals.**Nous sommes*, we are.*vous êtes*, ye are.*ils sont*, they are.*Imperfect.**J'étois*, I was.*tu étois*, thou wast.*il étoit*, he was.*Nous étions*, we were.*vous étiez*, ye were.*ils étoient*, they were.*Preterite.**Je fus*, I was.*tu fus*, thou wast.*il fut*, he was.*Nous fûmes*, we were.*vous fûtes*, ye were.*ils furent*, they were.*Preter-indefinite.**J'ai été*, I have been.*tu as été*, thou hast been.*il a été*, he has been.*Nous avons été*, we have

been.

vous avez été, ye have been.*ils ont été*, they have been.*First Preter-pluperfect.**J'avois été*, I had been.*tu avois été*, thou hadst

been.

il avoit été, he had been.*Nous avions été*, we had

been.

vous aviez été, ye had

been.

ils avoient été, they had

been.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

Singulars.

Jeus été, I had been.
tu eus été, thou hadst been.

il eut été, he had been.

Plurals.

Nous eûmes été, we had been.

vous eûtes été, ye had been.
ils eurent été, they had been.

Future.

Je serai, I shall, or will be.

tu seras, thou shalt, or wilt be.

il sera, he shall, or will be.

Nous serons, we shall, or will be.

vous serez, ye shall or will be.

ils seront, they shall, or will be.

Future past.

J'aurai été, I shall have been.

tu auras été, thou shalt have been.

il aura été, he shall have been.

Nous aurons été, we shall have been.

vous aurez été, ye shall have been.

ils auront été, they shall have been.

Conditional Present.

Je serois, I should be.

tu serois, thou shouldest be.

il seroit, he should be.

Nous serions, we should be.

vous seriez, ye should be.

ils seroient, they should be.

Conditional past.

J'aurois, or *j'eusse été*, I should have been.

tu aurois, or *tu eusses été*, thou shouldest have been.

il auroit, or *il eût été*, he should have been.

Nous aurions, or *nous eussions été*, we should have been.

vous auriez, or *vous eussiez été*, ye should have been.

ils auroient, or *ils eussent été*, they should have been.

Imperative

Imperative M O O D.*Present or Future.*

-----	<i>Soyons</i> , let us be.
<i>Sois</i> , be thou.	<i>soyez</i> , be ye.
<i>Qu'il soit</i> , let him be.	<i>qu'ils soient</i> , let them be.

Subjunctive M O O D.*Present or Future.*

<i>Que je sois</i> , that I may be.	<i>Que nous soyons</i> , that we may be.
<i>que tu sois</i> , that thou mayest be.	<i>Que vous soyez</i> , that ye may be.
<i>qu'il soit</i> , that he may be.	<i>Qu'ils soient</i> , that they may be.

Imperfect.

<i>Que je fusse</i> , that I were.	<i>Que nous fussions</i> , that we were.
<i>que tu fusses</i> , that thou wert.	<i>que vous fussiez</i> , that ye were.
<i>qu'il fût</i> , that he were.	<i>qu'ils fussent</i> , that they were.

Preterite.

<i>Que j'aie été</i> , that I may have been.	<i>Que nous ayions été</i> , that we may have been.
<i>que tu aies été</i> , that thou mayest have been.	<i>que vous ayez été</i> , that ye may have been.
<i>qu'il ait été</i> , that he may have been.	<i>qu'ils aient été</i> , that they may have been.

Preter-pluperfect.

<i>Que j'eusse été</i> , that I might have been.	<i>Que nous eussions été</i> , that we might have been.
<i>que tu eusses été</i> , that thou mightest have been.	<i>que vous eussiez été</i> , that ye might have been.
<i>qu'il eût été</i> , that he might have been.	<i>qu'ils eussent été</i> , that they might have been.

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. *Etre*, to be.Preterite. *Avoir été*, to have been.*Participle active.*Present. *Etant*, being.Preterite. *Ayant été*, having been.*Participle passive.*Present. *Êté*, been.*Gerund.**Etant*, being.

ARTICLE II.

EXAMPLES of the Four Conjugations of Regular Active Verbs, with the Formation of their Tenses.

THE first conjugation ends the infinitive in *Er* as,

CHANTER, to sing.

Participles.

<i>Chantant</i> , singing	} <i>Active</i>
<i>chanté</i> , sung.	

Indicative MOOD.

*Present.*Is formed from the participle active, by changing *ant* into *e*, *es*, *e*, *ons*, *ez*, *ent*.

Je chante, I sing.
tu chantes, thou singest.
il chante, he sings.

Nous chantons, we sing.
vous chantez, ye sing.
ils chantent, they sing.

Imperfect.

*Singulars.**Imperfect.**Plurals.*

Is formed from the participle active, by changing *ant* into *ois, ois, oit, ions, iez, oient*, in all conjugations:

<i>Je chantois</i> , I sang.	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we sang.
<i>tu chantois</i> , thou didst sing.	<i>vous chantiez</i> , ye sang.
<i>il chançoit</i> , he did sing.	<i>ils chantoient</i> , they sang.

Preterite.

Is formed from the participle active, by changing *ant* into *ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, erent*.

<i>Je chantai</i> , I sang.	<i>Nous chantâmes</i> , we sang.
<i>tu chantas</i> , thou didst sing.	<i>vous chantâtes</i> , ye sang.
<i>il chanta</i> , he did sing.	<i>ils chanterent</i> , they sang.

Preter-indefinite.

From the participle passive is formed all the compound tenses in the *indicative, subjunctive, infinitive*, and *participles active*, by joining to the participle passive, the simple tenses of the auxiliary *avoir*, or *être*.

<i>J'ai chanté</i> , I have sung.	<i>Nous avons chanté</i> , we have sung.
<i>tu as chanté</i> , thou hast sung.	<i>vous avez chanté</i> , ye have sung.
<i>il a chanté</i> , he has sung.	<i>ils ont chanté</i> , they have sung.

First Preter-pluperfect.

<i>J'avois chanté</i> , I had sung.	<i>Nous avions chanté</i> , we had sung.
<i>tu avois chanté</i> , thou hadst sung.	<i>vous aviez chanté</i> , ye had sung.
<i>il avoit chanté</i> , he had sung.	<i>ils avoient chanté</i> , they had sung.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

<i>Jeus chanté</i> , I had sung.	<i>Nous eûmes chanté</i> , we had sung.
<i>tu eus chanté</i> , thou hadst sung.	<i>vous eûtes chanté</i> , ye had sung.
<i>il eut chanté</i> , he had sung.	<i>ils eurent chanté</i> , they had sung.

Singulars.

Future.

Plurals.

In the first and second conjugations is formed from the infinitive present by adding *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont.*

<i>Je chanterai</i> , I will sing.	<i>Nous chanterons</i> , we will sing.
<i>tu chanteras</i> , thou wilt sing.	<i>vous chanterez</i> , ye will sing.
<i>il chantera</i> , he will sing.	<i>ils chanteront</i> , they will sing.

Future past.

<i>J'aurai chanté</i> , I shall have sung.	<i>Nous aurons chanté</i> , we shall have sung.
<i>tu auras chanté</i> , thou shalt have sung.	<i>vous aurez chanté</i> , ye shall have sung.
<i>il aura chanté</i> , he shall have sung.	<i>ils auront chanté</i> , they shall have sung.

Conditional present.

Is formed in all conjugations, by changing *rai*, of the future into *rois*, &c.

<i>Je chanterois</i> , I should sing.	<i>Nous chanterions</i> , we should sing.
<i>tu chanterois</i> , thou shouldst sing.	<i>vous chanteriez</i> , ye should sing.
<i>il chanteroit</i> , he should sing.	<i>ils chanteraient</i> , they should sing.

Conditional past.

<i>J'aurois</i> , or <i>j'eusse chanté</i> , I should have sung.	<i>Nous aurions</i> , or <i>nous eussions chanté</i> , we should have sung.
<i>tu aurois</i> , or <i>tu eusses chanté</i> , thou shouldst have sung.	<i>vous auriez</i> , or <i>vous eussiez chanté</i> , ye should have sung.
<i>il auroit</i> , or <i>il eût chanté</i> , he should have sung.	<i>ils auroient</i> , or <i>ils eussent chanté</i> , they should have sung.

Imperative

Imperative M O O D.*Singulars. Present or Future. Plurals.*Is formed from the first person singular of the present indicative by suppressing *je*.

-----	<i>Chantons</i> , let us sing.
<i>Chante</i> , sing thou.	<i>chantez</i> , sing ye.
<i>Qu'il chante</i> , let him sing.	<i>qu'ils chantent</i> , let them sing.

Subjunctive M O O D.*Present, or Future.*Is formed from the participle active, by changing *ant* into *e* mute, *es*, *e*, *ions*, *iez*, *ent*, and adding *que*.

<i>Que je chante</i> , that I may sing.	<i>que nous chantions</i> , that we may sing.
<i>que tu chantes</i> , that thou mayest sing.	<i>que vous chantiez</i> , that ye may sing.
<i>qu'il chante</i> , that he may sing.	<i>qu'ils chantent</i> , that they may sing.

*Imperfect.*Is formed from the preterite of the indicative, by changing *ai* into *asse*, *asses*, *ât*, *assions*, *assiez*, *assent*.

<i>Que je chantasse</i> , that I might sing.	<i>Que nous chantassions</i> , that we might sing.
<i>que tu chantasses</i> , that thou mightest sing.	<i>que vous chantassiez</i> , that ye might sing.
<i>qu'il chantât</i> , that he might sing.	<i>qu'ils chantassent</i> , that they might sing.

Preterite.

<i>Que j'aie chanté</i> , that I may have sung.	<i>Que nous ayions chanté</i> , that we may have sung.
<i>que tu aies chanté</i> , that thou mayest have sung.	<i>que vous ayez chanté</i> , that ye may have sung.
<i>qu'il ait chanté</i> , that he may have sung.	<i>qu'ils aient chanté</i> , that they may have sung.

Singulars.

Preter-pluperfect.

Plurals.

Que j'eusse chanté, that I
might have sung.

que tu eusses chanté, that
thou mightest have sung.

qu'il eût chanté, that he
might have sung.

Que nous-eussions chanté,
that we might have sung.

que vous eussiez chanté, that
ye might have sung.

qu'ils eussent chanté, that
they might have sung.

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. *Chanter*, to sing.

Preterite. *Avoir chanté*, to have sung.

Participle active.

Present. *Chantant*, singing.

Preterite. *Ayant chanté*, having sung.

Participle passive.

Present. *Chanté*, *maſ. chantée*, *fem. fung*, or *étant*
chanté, *e*, being sung.

Preterite. *Ayant été chanté*, *e*, having been sung.

Gerund.

En chantant, in singing.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

THE second conjugation ends the infinitive in *ir*;
as,

BATIR, to build.

Participles.

Bâtissant, building. } *Active.*

Bâti, built. } *Passive.*

Indicative MOOD.

Present.

Is formed from the infinitive, by changing *ir* into *is*,
is, *it*, *issent*, *issez*, *issent*.

Je bâtis, I build.

tu bâtis, thou buildest.

il bâtit, he builds.

Nous bâtittons, we build.

vous bâtissez, ye build.

ils bâtissent, they build.

Imperfect

*Imperfect.**Singulars.*

Je bâtissois, I built.
tu bâtissois, thou didst build.
il bâtissoit, he built.

Plurals.

Nous bâtissions, we built.
vous bâtissiez, ye built.
ils bâtissaient, they built.

Preterite.

Is formed from the infinitive, by changing *ir* into *is*,
is, it, îmes, îtes, irent.

Je bâtis, I built.
tu bâtis, thou didst build.
il bâtit, he built.

Nous bâtîmes, we built.
vous bâtîtes, ye built.
ils bâtirent, they built.

Preter-indefinite.

J'ai bâti, I have built.
tu as bâti, thou hast built.
il a bâti, he has built.

Nous avons bâti, we have built.
vous avez bâti, ye have built.
ils ont bâti, they have built.

First Preter-pluperfect.

J'avois bâti, I had built.
tu avois bâti, thou hadst built.
il avoit bâti, he had built.

Nous avions bâti, we had built.
vous aviez bâti, ye had built.
ils avoient bâti, they had built.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

Jeus bâti, I had built.
tu eus bâti, thou hadst built.
il eut bâti, he had built.

Nous eûmes bâti, we had built.
vous eûtes bâti, ye had built.
ils eurent bâti, they had built.

Future.

Je bâtirai, I will build.
tu bâtiras, thou wilt build.
il bâtira, he will build.

Nous bâtirons, we will build.
vous bâtirez, ye will build.
ils bâtiront, they will build.

Future

Singulars.

Future past.

Plurals.

J'aurai bâti, I shall have built.

tu auras bâti, thou shalt have built.

il aura bâti, he shall have built.

Nous aurons bâti, we shall have built.

vous aurez bâti, ye shall have built.

ils auront bâti, they shall have built.

Conditional present.

Je bâtirois, I should build.

tu bâtirois, thou shouldest build.

il bâtiroit, he should build.

Nous bâtirions, we should build.

vous bâtiriez, ye should build.

ils bâtiroient, they should build.

Conditional past.

j'aurois, or *j'eusse bâti*, I should have built.

tu aurois, or *tu eusses bâti*, thou shouldest have built.

il auroit, or *il eût bâti*, he should have built.

nous aurions, or *nous eussions bâti*, we should have built.

vous auriez, or *vous eussiez bâti*, ye should have built.

ils auroient, or *ils eussent bâti*, they should have built.

Imperative M O O D.

Present, or Future.

Is formed from the infinitive, by changing *ir* into *is*, *isse*, *issons*, *issez*, *issent*.

Bâtis, build, or build thou.
qu'il bâtisse, let him build.

bâtissons, let us build.
bâtissez, build, or build ye.
qu'ils bâtissent, let them build.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive MOOD.

Present or Future.

Is formed from the participle active, by changing *ant* into *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent*, and adding *que*.

Singulars.

Que je bâtisse, that I may build.
que tu bâtisses, that thou mayest build.
qu'il bâtisse, that he may build.

Plurals.

que nous bâtissions, that we may build.
que vous bâtissiez, that ye may build.
qu'ils bâtissent, that they may build.

Imperfect.

Is formed from the preterite of the indicative, by changing *is* into *isse, isses, it, issions, issiez, issent*, and adding *que*.

Que je bâtisse, that I might build.
que tu bâtisses, that thou mightest build.
qu'il bâtît, that he might build.

que nous bâtissions, that we might build.
que vous bâtissiez, that ye might build.
qu'ils bâtissent, that they might build.

Preterite.

Que j'aie bâti, that I may have built.
que tu aies bâti, that thou mayest have built.
qu'il ait bâti, that he may have built.

que nous ayions bâti, that we may have built.
que vous ayez bâti, that ye may have built.
qu'ils aient bâti, that they may have built.

Preter-pluperfect.

Que j'eusse bâti, that I might have built.
que tu eusses bâti, that thou mightest have built.
qu'il eût bâti, that he might have built.

que nous eussions bâti, that we might have built.
que vous eussiez bâti, that ye might have built.
qu'ils eussent bâti, that they might have built.

Infinitive

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. BATIR, to build.

Preterite. Avoir bâti, to have built.

Participle active.

Present. Bâtissant, building.

Preterite. Ayant bâti, having built.

Participle passive.

Bâti, or bâtie, built, or étant bâti, e, being built.

Gerund.

En bâtitant, or bâtissant, in building.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

THE third conjugation ends the infinitive in Oir;
as,

Recevoir, to receive.

Participles.

Recevant, receiving. } Active.

Reçu, received. } Passive.

Indicative MOOD.

Present.

Is formed from the infinitive present, by changing *avoir*
into *ois, ois, oit, evons, evez, oivent*.

Je reçois, I receive.

nous recevons, we receive.

tu reçois, thou receivest.

vous recevez, ye receive.

il reçoit, he receives.

ils reçoivent, they receive.

Imperfect.

je recevois, I received.

nous recevions, we received.

tu recevois, thou didst re-

vous receviez, ye received.

ceive.

il recevoit, he did receive.

ils recevoient, they received.

Preterite.

Preterite.

Is formed from the infinitive present, by changing *evoir* into *us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, ûrent*.

<i>je reçus</i> , I received.	<i>nous reçûmes</i> , we received.
<i>tu reçus</i> , thou didst receive.	<i>vous reçûtes</i> , ye received.
<i>il reçut</i> , he received.	<i>ils reçûrent</i> , they received.

Preter-indefinite.

<i>j'ai reçu</i> , I have received.	<i>nous avons reçu</i> , we have received.
<i>tu as reçu</i> , thou hast received.	<i>vous avez reçu</i> , ye have received.
<i>il a reçu</i> , he has received.	<i>ils ont reçu</i> , they have received.

First Preter-pluperfect.

<i>j'avois reçu</i> , I had received.	<i>nous avions reçu</i> , we had received.
<i>tu avois reçu</i> , thou hadst received.	<i>vous aviez reçu</i> , ye had received.
<i>il avoit reçu</i> , he had received.	<i>ils avoient reçu</i> , they had received.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

<i>j'eus reçu</i> , I had received.	<i>nous eûmes reçu</i> , we had received.
<i>tu eus reçu</i> , thou hadst received.	<i>vous eûtes reçu</i> , ye had received.
<i>il eut reçu</i> , he had received.	<i>ils eurent reçu</i> , they had received.

Future.

Is formed from the infinitive present, by changing *oir* into *rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront*.

<i>je recevrai</i> , I will receive.	<i>nous recevrons</i> , we will receive.
<i>tu recevras</i> , thou wilt receive.	<i>vous recevrez</i> , ye will receive.
<i>il recevra</i> , he will receive.	<i>ils recevront</i> , they will receive.

Future

Singulars.	Future past.	Plurals.
<i>j'aurai reçu</i> , I shall have received.		<i>nous aurons reçu</i> , we shall have received.
<i>tu auras reçu</i> , thou shalt have received.		<i>vous aurez reçu</i> , ye shall have received.
<i>il aura reçu</i> , he shall have received.		<i>ils auront reçu</i> , they shall have received.

Conditional present.	
<i>je recevrais</i> , I should receive.	<i>nous recevriions</i> , we should receive.
<i>tu recevrais</i> , thou shouldest receive.	<i>vous recevriez</i> , ye should receive.
<i>il recevrait</i> , he should receive.	<i>ils recevraient</i> , they should receive.

Conditional past.	
<i>j'aurois</i> , or <i>j'eusse reçu</i> , I should have received.	<i>nous aurions</i> , or <i>nous eussions reçu</i> , we should have received.
<i>tu aurois</i> , or <i>tu eusses reçu</i> , thou shouldest have received.	<i>vous auriez</i> , or <i>vous eussiez reçu</i> , ye should have received.
<i>il auroit</i> , or <i>il eût reçu</i> , he should have received.	<i>ils auroient</i> , or <i>ils eussent reçu</i> , they should have received.

Imperative MOOD.

Present or Future.

Is formed from the first person singular of the present indicative by suppressing *je*, and adding *que*.

<i>Reçois</i> , receive, or receive thou.	<i>recevons</i> , let us receive.
<i>qu'il reçoit</i> , let him receive.	<i>recevez</i> , receive, or receive ye.
	<i>qu'ils reçoivent</i> , let them receive.

Sub-

Is fo
changi
oivent,
Que je
recei

que tu
may
qu'il re
recei

Is fo
adding
perfo
siez,
Que je
recei
que tu
migh
qu'il re
recei

Que j'a
have
que tu
may
qu'il ai
have

Que j
migh
que tu e
migh
qu'il eû
have

Subjunctive MOOD.

Present or Future.

Is formed from the participle active present, by changing *evant* into *oive*, *oives*, *oive*, *evions*, *eviez*, *oivent*, and adding *que*.

Que je reçoive, that I may receive.

que tu reçoives, that thou mayest receive.

qu'il reçoive, that he may receive.

Que nous recevions, that we may receive.

que vous receviez, that ye may receive.

qu'ils reçoivent, that they may receive.

Imperfect.

Is formed from the preterite of the indicative by adding *se*, *ses*, and by changing *us* into *ût* in the third person singular, and in the plural by adding *fions*, *siez*, *sent*.

Que je reçusse, that I might receive.

que tu reçusses, that thou mightest receive.

qu'il reçût, that he might receive.

que nous reçussions, that we might receive.

que vous reçussiez, that ye might receive.

qu'ils reçussent, that they might receive.

Preterite.

Que j'aie reçu, that I may have received.

que tu aies reçu, that thou mayest have received.

qu'il ait reçu, that he may have received.

que nous ayions reçu, that we may have received.

que vous ayez reçu, that ye may have received.

qu'ils aient reçu, that they may have received.

Preter-pluperfect.

Que j'eusse reçu, that I might have received.

que tu eusses reçu, that thou mightest have received.

qu'il eût reçu, that he might have received.

que nous eussions reçu, that we might have received.

que vous eussiez reçu, that ye might have received.

qu'ils eussent reçu, that they might have received.

Infinitive

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. *Recevoir*, to receive.Preterite. *Avoir reçu*, to have received.*Participle active.*Present. *Recevant*, receiving.Preterite. *Ayant reçu*, having received.*Participle passive.*Present. *Reçu*, *mas. reçue*, *fem.* received.Preterite. *Ayant été reçu*, or *reçue*, having been received.*Gerund.**En recevant*, or *recevant*, in receiving.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

THE fourth conjugation ends the infinitive in *Re*, *dre*, *tre*, *pre*, &c. as,**RENDRE**, to restore.*Participles.**Rendant*, restoring. } *Active.**Rendu*, restored. } *Passive.*

Indicative MOOD.

*Present.*Is formed from the infinitive, by changing *re* into *s*, &c.*Je rends*, I restore.*nous rendons*, we restore.*tu rends*, thou restorest.*vous rendez*, ye restore.*il rend*, he restoreth.*ils rendent*, they restore.*Imperfect.**Je rendois*, I did restore.*nous rendions*, we did restore.*tu rendois*, thou didst restore.*vous rendiez*, ye did restore.*il rendoit*, he did restore.*ils rendoient*, they did restore.*Preterite.*

*Singulars.**Preterite.**Plurals.*

Is formed from the infinitive, by changing *re* into *is*,
is, it, îmes, îtes, irent.

Je rendis, I restored.

tu rendis, thou restoredst.

il rendit, he restored.

Nous rendîmes, we restored.

vous rendîtes, ye restored.

ils rendirent, they restored.

Preter-indefinite.

J'ai rendu, I have restored.

tu as rendu, thou hast restored.

il a rendu, he has restored.

Nous avons rendu, we have restored.

vous avez rendu, ye have restored.

ils ont rendu, they have restored.

First Preter-pluperfect.

J'avois rendu, I had restored.

tu avois rendu, thou hadst restored.

il avoit rendu, he had restored.

Nous avions rendu, we had restored.

vous aviez rendu, ye had restored.

ils avoient rendu, they had restored.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

J'eus rendu, I had restored.

tu eus rendu, thou hadst restored.

il eut rendu, he had restored.

Nous eûmes rendu, we had restored.

vous eûtes rendu, ye had restored.

ils eurent rendu, they had restored.

Future.

Is formed from the infinitive, by changing *re* into *rai*,
ras, ra, rons, rez, ront.

Je rendrai, I will restore.

tu rendras, thou wilt restore.

il rendra, he will restore.

Nous rendrons, we will restore.

vous rendrez, ye will restore.

ils rendront, they will restore.

L

Future

Future past.

Singulars.

J'aurai rendu, I shall have restored.

tu auras rendu, thou shalt have restored.

il aura rendu, he shall have restored.

Plurals.

Nous aurons rendu, we shall have restored.

vous aurez rendu, ye shall have restored.

ils auront rendu, they shall have restored.

Conditional present.

Je rendrais, I should restore.

tu rendrais, thou shouldest restore.

il rendrait, he should restore.

Nous rendrions, we should restore.

vous rendriez, ye should restore.

ils rendroient, they should restore.

Conditional past.

J'aurois, or *j'eusse rendu*, I should have restored.

tu aurois, or *tu eusses rendu*, thou shouldest have restored.

il auroit, or *il eût rendu*, he should have restored.

Nous aurions, or *nous eussions rendu*, we should have restored.

vous auriez, or *vous eussiez rendu*, ye should have restored.

ils auroient, or *ils eussent rendu*, they should have restored.

Imperative MOOD.

Present or Future.

Is formed from the present of the indicative, by suppressing *je* and adding *que*.

Rends, restore thou.

qu'il rende, let him restore.

Rendons, let us restore.

Rendez, restore ye.

qu'ils rendent, let them restore.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive MOOD.*Singulars. Present or Future. Plurals.*

Is formed from the participle active present, by changing *ant* into *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent*, and adding *que*.

<i>Que je rende</i> , that I may restore.	<i>Que nous rendions</i> , that we may restore.
<i>que tu rendes</i> , that thou mayest restore.	<i>que vous rendiez</i> , that ye may restore.
<i>qu'il rende</i> , that he may restore.	<i>qu'ils rendent</i> , that they may restore.

Imperfect.

Is formed from the preterite of the indicative only, by adding *se, &c.*

<i>Que je rendisse</i> , that I might restore.	<i>Que nous rendissions</i> , that we might restore.
<i>que tu rendisses</i> , that thou mightest restore.	<i>que vous rendissiez</i> , that ye might restore.
<i>qu'il rendît</i> , that he might restore.	<i>qu'ils rendissent</i> , that they might restore.

Preterite.

<i>Que j'aie rendu</i> , that I have restored.	<i>Que nous ayions rendu</i> , that we may have restored.
<i>que tu aies rendu</i> , that thou mayest have restored.	<i>que vous ayez rendu</i> , that ye may have restored.
<i>qu'il ait rendu</i> , that he may have restored.	<i>qu'ils aient rendu</i> , that they may have restored.

Preter-pluperfect.

<i>Que j'eusse rendu</i> , that I might have restored.	<i>Que nous eussions rendu</i> , that we might have restored.
<i>que tu eusses rendu</i> , that thou mightest have restored.	<i>que vous eussiez rendu</i> , that ye might have restored.
<i>qu'il eût rendu</i> , that he might have restored.	<i>qu'ils eussent rendu</i> , that they might have restored.

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. RENDRE, to restore.

Preterite. *Avoir rendu*, to have restored.

Participle active.

Present. *Rendant*, restoring.Preterite. *Ayant rendu*, having restored.

Participle passive.

Present. *Rendu*, *mas. rendue*, fem. restored.Preterite. *Ayant été rendu*, or *due*, having been restored.

Gerund.

En rendant, or *rendant*, in restoring.

ARTICLE III.

Of the NEUTER VERB.

THE most part of neuter verbs are conjugated like the active, with the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses, and some with *être*; and though there is no general rule to know the neuter verbs, which are conjugated with *avoir*, from those conjugated with *être*; yet it must be observed that those, of which the participles passive are declinable adjectives, that is to say, may be joined to substantives masculine or feminine, with different terminations for the gender and number are conjugated with *être*: whereas, those of which the participles passive are indeclinable, and cannot be joined to any noun substantive, are conjugated with *avoir*.

Conjugation

Conjugation of the Neuter Verb Tomber, to fall; with
Etre.

*** The simple tenses of this verb are conjugated
like those of *chanter*.

Participles.

Tombant, falling. } Active.
Tombé, or *ée*, fallen. } Passive.

Indicative MOOD.

Singulars.

Plurals.

Pres. <i>Je tombe</i> , I fall.	<i>Nous tombons</i> , we fall.
Imperf. <i>je tombois</i> , I fell.	<i>nous tombions</i> , we fell.
Pret. <i>je tombai</i> , I fell.	<i>nous tombâmes</i> , we fell.

Preter-indefinite.

<i>Je suis tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , I have fallen.	<i>Nous sommes tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , we have fallen.
<i>tu es tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , thou hast fallen.	<i>vous êtes tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , ye have fallen.
<i>il, or elle est tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , he, or she has fallen.	<i>ils, or elles sont tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , they have fallen.

First Preter-pluperfect.

<i>J'étois tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , I had fallen.	<i>Nous étions tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , we had fallen.
<i>tu étois tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , thou hadst fallen.	<i>vous étiez tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , ye had fallen.
<i>il étoit tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , he had fallen.	<i>ils étoient tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , they had fallen.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

<i>Je fus tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , I had fallen.	<i>Nous fûmes tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , we had fallen.
<i>tu fus tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , thou hadst fallen.	<i>vous fûtes tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , ye had fallen.
<i>il fut tombé</i> , or <i>ée</i> , he had fallen.	<i>ils furent tombés</i> , or <i>ées</i> , they had fallen.

Future.

<i>Je tomberai</i> , I will fall.	<i>Nous tomberons</i> , we will fall.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Future past.

Singulars.

Je serai tombé, or ée, I
shall have fallen.

tu seras tombé, or ée, thou
shalt have fallen.

il sera tombé, or ée, he shall
have fallen.

Plurals.

Nous serons tombés, or ées,
we shall have fallen.

vous serez tombés, or ées,
ye shall have fallen.

ils seront tombés, or ées,
they shall have fallen.

Conditional present.

Je tomberois, I should fall.

Nous tomberions, we should
fall.

Conditional past.

Je serois, or je fusse tombé,
or ée, I should have
fallen.

tu serois, or tu fusses tombé,
or ée, thou shouldst have
fallen.

il seroit, or il fût tombé, or
ée, he should have fallen.

Nous serions, or nous fussions
tombés, or ées, we should
have fallen.

vous seriez, or vous fussiez
tombés, or ées, ye should
have fallen.

ils seroient, or ils fussent
tombés, or ées, they
should have fallen.

Imperative MOOD.

Pref. or Fut. *Tombe, fall*
thou.

Tombons, let us fall,

Subjunctive MOOD.

Pref. or Fut. *Que je tombe,*
that I may fall.

Imperf. *Que je tombasse,*
that I might fall.

Que nous tombions, that we
may fall.

Que nous tombassions, that
we might fall.

Preterite,

*Preterite.**Singulars.*

Que je sois tombé, or ée,
that I may have fallen.

que tu sois tombé, or ée,
that thou mayest have
fallen.

qu'il soit tombé, or ée, that
he may have fallen.

Plurals.

Que nous soyons tombés, or
ées, that we may have
fallen.

que vous soyez tombés, or
ées, that ye may have
fallen.

qu'ils soient tombés, or ées,
that they may have fallen.

Preter-pluperfect.

Que je fusse tombé, or ée,
that I might have fallen.

que tu fusses tombé, or ée,
that thou mightest have
fallen.

qu'il fût tombé, or ée, that
he might have fallen.

Que nous fussions tombés,
or *ées, that we might*
have fallen.

que vous fussiez tombés, or
ées, that ye might have
fallen.

qu'ils fussent tombés, or
ées, that they might have
fallen.

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. Tomber, to fall.

Preterite. être tombé, or ée, to have fallen.

Participle active.

Present. Tombant, falling.

Preterite. étant tombé, or ée, having fallen.

Participle passive.

Tombé, or ée, fallen.

Gerund.

En tombant, or tombant, in falling.

ARTICLE IV. OF PASSIVE VERBS.

THERE are no *passive verbs* in the *French* language distinguished from others by their inflexions; but in order to supply this want, and to express the passive signification of active verbs, the *French* make use of the *substantive verb* *Etre*, which they join to, and conjugate with the participle passive in each active verb, and by this mean they express all the moods and tenses of a *passive verb*. Observe that no verbs but such as are really active, can be reduced into passive.

As the conjugation of passive verbs is easy, I shall only give the first persons of each tense.

AIMER, to love,

Indicative MOOD.

Singulars.

Pref. *Je suis aimé*, or *ée*, I am loved.

Imperf. *j'étois aimé*, or *ée*, I was loved.

Preter. *je fus aimé*, or *ée*, I was loved.

Pret. Ind. *j'ai été aimé*, or *ée*, I have been loved.

1st P. pl. *j'avois été aimé*, or *ée*, I had been loved.

2d P. pl. *j'eus été aimé*, or *ée*, I had been loved.

Fut. *je serai aimé*, or *ée*, I will be loved.

Plurals.

Nous sommes aimés, or *ées*, we are loved.

nous étions aimés, or *ées*, we were loved.

nous fûmes aimés, or *étés*, we were loved.

nous avons été aimés, or *ées*, we have been loved.

nous avions été aimés, or *ées*, we had been loved.

nous eûmes été aimés, or *ées*, we had been loved.

nous serons aimés, or *ées*, we will be loved.

Fut.

*Singulars.**Plurals.*

Fut. past. *J'aurai été aimé,*
or *ée*, I shall have been
loved.

C. P. *je serois aimé,* or *ée*,
I should be loved.

C. past. *j'aurais,* or *j'eusse*
été aimé, or *ée*, I should
have been loved.

Nous aurons été aimés, or
ées, we shall have been
loved.

nous serions aimés, or *ées*,
we should be loved.

nous aurions, or *nous eus-*
sions été aimés, or *ées*, we
should have been loved.

Imperative

MOOD.

Pres. Fut. *Sois aimé,* or *ée*,
be loved.

Soyons aimés, or *ées*, let us
be loved.

Subjunctive

MOOD.

P. Fut. *Que je sois aimé,* or
ée, that I may be loved.

Im. *que je fusse aimé,* or
ée, that I might be loved.

Pret. *que j'aie été aimé,* or
ée, that I may have been
loved.

P. pl. *que j'eusse été aimé,*
or *ée*, that I might have
been loved.

Que nous soyons aimés, or
ées, that we may be loved.

que nous fussions aimés, or
ées, that we might be
loved.

que nous ayions été aimés,
or *ées*, that we may have
been loved.

que nous eussions été aimés,
or *ées*, that we might
have been loved.

Infinitive

MOOD.

Pres. *Etre aimé,* or *ée*, to be loved.

Pret. *Avoir été aimé,* or *ée*, to have been loved.

Participle passive.

Pres. *Aimé,* or *aimée*, loved.

Pret. *Ayant été aimé,* or *ée*, having been loved.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE V. OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

IN *reflective verbs* we use the conjunctive pronouns *me, te, se*, in the three persons singular, and *nous, vous, se*, in those of the plural, between the nominative and the verb, thus, *je me, tu te, il, or elle se, nous nous, vous vous, ils, or elles se*.

You must, however, observe that a verb is not always reflective when there is a conjunctive pronoun between the nominative and it: for, if the conjunctive pronoun and the nominative do not refer to the same thing it is not. In *vous me louez*, you praise me; the verb is not reflective, because *vous* and *me* refer to two different persons. From which it follows, that all active verbs may become reflective, when the subject which acts, can act upon itself. *Je flatte*, I flatter; is active, and becomes reflective, when I say, *je me flatte*, I flatter myself.

Reflective verbs take *être*, to form their compound tenses.

E X A M P L E.

Se repentir, to repent.

Participles.

Se repentant, repenting. } *Active.*

Repenti, or ie, repented. } *Passive.*

Indicative M O O D.

Present.

Singular.

Je me repens, I repent.

tute repens, thou repentest.

il, or elle se repent, he, or she repents.

Plural.

Nous nous repentons, we repent.

vous vous repentez, ye repent.

ils, or elles se repentent, they repent.

Imperfect.

*Imperfect.**Singulars.**Je me repentois*, I repented.*tu te repentois*, thou didst repent.*il se repentoit*, he repented.*Plurals.**Nous nous repentions*, we repented.*vous vous repentiez*, ye repented.*ils se repentoient*, they repented.*Preterite.**Je me repentis*, I repented.*tu te repentis*, thou didst repent.*il se repentit*, he repented.*Nous nous repentîmes*, we repented.*vous vous repentîtes*, ye repented.*ils se repentirent*, they repented.*Preter-indefinite.**Je me suis repenti*, or *ie*, I have repented.*tu t'es repenti*, or *ie*, thou hast repented.*il s'est repenti*, or *ie*, he has repented.*Nous nous sommes repentis*, or *ies*, we have repented.*vous vous êtes repentis*, or *ies*, ye have repented.*ils se sont repentis*, or *ies*, they have repented.*First Preter-pluperfect.**Je m'étois repenti*, or *ie*, I had repented.*tu t'étois repenti*, or *ie*, thou hadst repented.*il s'étoit repenti*, or *ie*, he had repented.*Nous nous étions repentis*, or *ies*, we had repented.*vous vous étiez repentis*, or *ies*, ye had repented.*ils s'étoient repentis*, or *ies*, they had repented.*Second Preter-pluperfect.**Je me fus repenti*, or *ie*, I had repented.*tu te fus repenti*, or *ie*, thou hadst repented.*il se fut repenti*, or *ie*, he had repented.*Nous nous fûmes repentis*, or *ies*, we had repented.*vous vous fûtes repentis*, or *ies*, ye had repented.*ils se furent repentis*, or *ies*, they had repented.*Future.*

Future.

Singulars.

Je me repentirai, I will repent.

Plurals.

Nous nous repentirons, we will repent.

Future past.

Je me serai repenti, or *ie*, I shall have repented.

Nous nous serons repents, or *ies*, we shall have repented.

tu te seras repenti, or *ie*, thou shalt have repented.

vous vous serez repents, or *ies*, ye shall have repented.

il se sera repenti, or *ie*, he shall have repented.

ils se seront repents, or *ies*, they shall have repented.

Conditional present.

Je me repentirois, I should repent.

Nous nous repentirions, we should repent.

Conditional past.

Je me serois, or *je me fusse repenti*, or *ie*, I should have repented.

Nous nous serions, or *nous nous fussions repents*, or *ies*, we should have repented.

tu te serois, or *tu te fusses repenti*, or *ie*, thou shouldst have repented.

vous vous seriez, or *vous vous fussiez repents*, or *ies*, ye should have repented.

il se seroit, or *il se fût repenti*, or *ie*, he should have repented.

ils se seroient, or *ils se fussent repents*, or *ies*, they should have repented.

Imperative MOOD.

Present or Future.

Repens-toi, repent thou,
qu'il se repente, let him repent.

Repentons-nous, let us repent.
repentez-vous, repent ye.
qu'ils se repentent, let them repent.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive MOOD.

Present or Future.

Singulars.

Que je me repente, that I
may repent.

que tu te repentes, that
thou mayest repent.

qu'il se repente, that he may
repent.

Plurals.

Que nous nous repentions,
that we may repent.

que vous vous repentiez,
that ye may repent.

qu'ils se repentent, that
they may repent.

Imperfect.

Que je me repentisse, that
I might repent.

que tu te repentisses, that
thou mightest repent.

qu'il se repentît, that he
might repent.

Que nous nous repentissions,
that we might repent.

que vous vous repentissiez,
that ye might repent.

qu'ils se repentissent, that
they might repent.

Preterite.

Que je me sois repenti, or
ie, that I may have re-
pented.

que tu te sois repenti, or *ie*,
that thou mayest have
repented.

qu'il se soit repenti, or *ie*,
that he may have re-
pented.

*Que nous nous soyons re-
pentis*, or *ies*, that we
may have repented.

*que vous vous soyez repen-
tis*, or *ies*, that ye may
have repented.

qu'ils se soient repentis, or
ies, that they may have
repented.

Pluperfect.

Que je me fusse repenti, or
ie, that I might have
repented.

que tu te fusses repenti, or
ie, that thou mightest
have repented.

qu'il se fût repenti, or *ie*,
that he might have re-
pented.

*Que nous nous fussions re-
pentis*, or *ies*, that we
might have repented.

*que vous vous fussiez re-
pentis*, or *ies*, that ye
might have repented.

qu'ils se fussent repentis, or
ies, that they might have
repented.

Infinitive

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. *Se repentir*, to repent.

Preterite. *S' être repenti*, or *ie*, to have repented.

Participle active.

Present. *Se repentant*, repenting.

Preterite. *S' étant repenti*, or *ie*, having repented.

Participle passive.

Present. *Repenti*, or *ie*, repented.

Gerund.

En se repentant, or *se repentant*, in repenting.

ARTICLE VI.

OF RECIPROCAL VERBS.

RECIPROCAL VERBS can only have a collective noun, or a noun in the plural for nominative, and consequently the conjunctive pronouns, which accompany them, can only be in the plural, viz. *Nous, vous, se*; from whence it follows that these verbs are conjugated in each tense by the three persons plural.

To determine the signification of a reciprocal verb, and to restrain it to that sense, it is sometimes necessary to put immediately after it, *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, mutuellement, reciproquement*, or *entre* before it, which is joined to the verb in such a manner as to make part of it, otherwise it might be taken for a reflexive verb.

* * The *reciprocal verbs* are conjugated also with the auxiliary *être*.

S'entre-battre, to fight among themselves.

Participles.

S'entre-battant, fighting among themselves. } *Active.*

Entre-battus, fought among themselves. } *Passive.*

Indicative

Indicative M O O D.

Present.

Nous nous entre-battons, vous vous entre-battez, ils s'entre-battent.

Imperfect.

Nous nous entre-battions, vous vous entre-battiez, ils s'entre-battoient.

Preterite.

Nous nous entre-batîmes, vous vous entre-batîtes, ils s'entre-battirent.

Preter-indefinite.

Nous nous sommes entre-battus, vous vous êtes entre-battus, ils se sont entre-battus.

First Preter-pluperfect.

Nous nous étions entre-battus, vous vous étiez entre-battus, ils s'étoient entre-battus.

Second Preter-pluperfect.

Nous nous fûmes entre-battus, vous vous fûtes entre-battus, ils se furent entre-battus.

Future.

Nous nous entre-battrons, vous vous entre-battrez, ils s'entre-battront.

Future past.

Nous nous serons entre-battus, vous vous serez entre-battus, ils se seront entre-battus.

Conditional present.

Nous nous entre-battrions, vous vous entre-battriez, ils s'entre-battraient.

Conditional past.

Nous nous serions, or nous nous fussions entre-battus, vous vous seriez, or vous vous fussiez entre-battus, ils se seroient, or ils se fussent entre-battus.

Imperative M O O D.

Present or Future.

Entre-battons nous, entre-battez vous, qu'ils s'entre-battent.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive MOOD.

Present or Future.

Que nous nous entre-battions, que vous vous entre-battiez, qu'ils s'entre-battent.

Imperfect.

Que nous nous entre-battissions, que vous vous entre-battissiez, qu'ils s'entre-battissent.

Preterite.

Que nous nous soyons entre-battus, que vous vous soyez entre-battus, qu'ils se soient entre-battus.

Preter-pluperfect.

Que nous nous fussions entre-battus, que vous vous fussiez entre-battus, qu'ils se fussent entre-battus.

Infinitive MOOD.

Present. *S'entre-battre.*Preterite. *S'être entre-battus.*

Participle active.

Present. *S'entre-battant.*Preterite. *S'étant entre-battus.*

Participle passive.

Entre-battus.

ARTICLE VII.

Of IMPERSONAL VERBS.

IMPERSONAL VERBS are used only in the third person singular, and are of two kinds, viz.

1. Those which are impersonal by nature; as, *il faut*, one must; *il pleut*, it rains; *il importe*, it behoves, &c.

2. Those which are sometimes impersonal, and sometimes personal; as, *convenir*, which is impersonal in *il convient que je me retire*, it is fit that I withdraw; and personal in *je conviens de ma faute*, I admit of my fault, &c.

Impersonal

Impersonal verbs, though preceded by *il* never express an action, and do not appear to have any nominative, for *il* is not to them what it is to others: for in other verbs it supplies the place of a noun formerly mentioned, and which may be easily supplied: Whereas in impersonals no noun expressed before can be put in its stead.

They may be reduced to nearly the following in number, viz. *agir, aller, arriver, y avoir, convenir, éclairer, ennuyer, s'ensuivre, être* followed by an adjective without a substantive, *faire, il faut* without the infinitive, *geler, grêler, il importe*, of which the infinitive *importer* is little more in use, *neiger, paraître, pouvoir, plaire, pleuvoir, sembler, suffire, tenir, tonner, valoir*, and all the verbs preceded by the general pronoun *on*, may be looked upon as impersonal.

Among those of the first conjugation, we shall only conjugate *grêler*, and *aimer*; of the third *falloir*, and *y avoir*. Those of the second and fourth being little defective, or not so much used it would be superfluous to conjugate them here at full length.

GRELER, to hail.

Indicative MOOD.

Pres. *Il grêle*, it hails.

Imp. *il grêloit*, it hailed.

Pret. *il grêla*, it hailed.

Pret-ind. *il a grêlé*, it has hailed.

Pret-plu. *il avoit grêlé*, it had hailed.

Pret-plu. *il eut grêlé*, it had hailed.

Fut. *il grêlera*, it will hail.

Fut. past. *il aura grêlé*, it shall have hailed.

Cond. pres. *il grêleroit*, it would hail.

Cond. past. *il auroit*, or *il eût grêlé*, it should have hailed.

Imperative MOOD.

Pres. or Fut. *Qu'il grêle*, let it hail.

M

Subjunctive

Subjunctive MOOD.
 Pres. or Fut. *Qu'il grêle,*
 that it may hail.
 Imperf. *qu'il grêlât,* that it
 might hail.
 Pret. *qu'il ait grêlé,* that it
 may have hailed.

Pret-plu. *qu'il eût grêlé,*
 that it had hailed.

Infinitive MOOD.
 Pres. *Grêler,* to hail.
 Pret. *avoir grêlé,* to have
 hailed.

Participle active.
 Present. *Grêlant,* hailing.
 Preterite. *Ayant grêlé,* having hailed.

Participle passive.
Grêlé, hailed.

AIMER, to love; with the general pronoun *on*.

Indicative MOOD.
 Pres. *On aime,* they love.
 Imp. *on aimoit,* they loved.
 Pret. *on aima,* they loved.
 Pret-ind. *on a aimé,* they
 have loved.
 1st Pret. plu. *on avoit aimé,*
 they had loved.
 2d Pret. plu. *on eut aimé,*
 they had loved.
 Fut. *on aimera,* they will
 love.
 Fut. past. *on aura aimé,*
 they shall have loved.
 Cond. pres. *on aimerait,*
 they should love.
 Cond. past. *on auroit,* or

on eût aimé, they should
 have loved.

Imperative MOOD.
 Pres. or Fut. *Qu'on aime,*
 let them love.

Subjunctive MOOD.
 Pres. or Fut. *Qu'on aime,*
 that they may love.

Imperf. *qu'on aimât,* that
 they might love.

Pret. *qu'on ait aimé,* that
 they may have loved.

Pret-plu. *qu'on eût aimé,*
 that they had loved.

Infinitive MOOD.
 Pres. *Aimer,* to love.

FAL

F A L L O I R.

Indicative M O O D.Pref. *Il faut*, one must.Imp. *il falloit*, it was necessary, or it behoved.Pret. *il fallut*, it was necessary.Pret-indef. *il a fallu*, it hath been necessary.1st Pret-plu. *il avoit fallu*, it had been necessary.2d Pret-plu. *il eut fallu*, it had been necessary.Fut. *il faudra*, it will be necessary.Fut. past. *il aura fallu*, it will have been necessary.Cond. pres. *il faudroit*, it would be necessary.Cond. past. *il auroit*, or *il eût fallu*, it would have been necessary.*Subjunctive* M O O D.Pref. or Fut. *Qu'il faille*, that it may be necessary.Imperf. *qu'il fallût*, that it might be necessary.Pret. *qu'il ait fallu*, that it may have been necessary.Pret-plu. *qu'il eût fallu*, that it had been necessary.*Participle active.*Present. *Ayant fallu*, having been necessary.

* * The moods and tenses of this verb, which are wanting, are no longer in use.

Y A V O I R.

Indicative M O O D.Pref. *Il y a*, there is, or there are.Imp. *il y avoit*, there was, &c.Pret. *il y eut*, there was, &c.Pret-indef. *il y a eu*, there hath been.1st Pret-plu. *il y avoit eu*, there had been.2d Pret-plu. *il y eut eu*, there had been.

M 2

Fut.

Fut. *il y aura*, there will be.

Fut. past. *il y aura eu*, there will have been.

Cond. pres. *il y auroit*, there would be.

Cond. past. *il y auroit*, or *il y eût eu*, there should have been.

Imperative MOOD.

Pref. or Fut. *Qu'il y ait*, let there be.

Subjunctive MOOD.

Pref. or Fut. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.

Imperf. *qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

Pret. *qu'il y ait eu*, that there may have been.

Pret-plu. *qu'il y eût eu*, that there had been.

Infinitive MOOD.

Pref. *Y avoir*, to have.

Pret. *Y avoir eu*, to have been.

Participle active.

Present. *Y ayant*, having.

Preterite. *Y ayant eu*, having been.

ARTICLE VIII.

Of AUXILIARY VERBS.

AN *auxiliary verb*, according to its etymology, serves to assist others in forming their compound tenses. They are *avoir* and *être*, and are auxiliary only when joined to the passive participles of other verbs.

AVOIR, when independant of passive participles is active, and signifies to possess; as, *j'ai de l'argent*, I have money; that is to say, *je possède de l'argent*, I possess money: and *être* is a substantive verb, of which the proper use is to join an attribute with a subject; as *Dieu est misericordieux*, God is merciful. *Avoir* forms

forms its compound tenses by itself, as auxiliary, with its own participle *eu*, and *être* takes the simple tenses of *avoir*, and its own participle *été*.

In reflected and reciprocal verbs *être* is simply put for the auxiliary *avoir*, and only serves to mark the different affinities of the tenses like *avoir*, without connecting the attribute with the subject.

ARTICLE IX.

of IRREGULAR and DEFECTIVE VERBS.

THE *irregular verbs* do not follow through all the tenses, the conjugation of the regular. You must observe also, that the compounds are conjugated like the simple. I shall only set down in the following table the tenses from which the others are formed.

I have put *être* on the side of the participle passive of such verbs as take that auxiliary to form their compound tenses,

Of the FIRST

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>Aller, to go.</i>	<i>Allant.</i>	<i>Allé, Etre.</i>	S. <i>Je vais, tu vas, il va.</i> P. <i>nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.</i>

Note. The compound tenses of the above with the place of which we speak; but when we want of it, we must then make use of *avoir* instead of

<i>S'en aller.</i>	<i>S'en allant.</i>	<i>S'en allé, être.</i>	S. <i>Je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va.</i> P. <i>nous nous en allons, v. v. en allez. Ils s'en vont.</i>
--------------------	---------------------	-------------------------	---

Notes. 1. *Employer*, and all the verbs of which the participles active in *yant*, take an *i* after *y* in the first and present of the subjunctive. Imperfect. *Nous nous employions; que vous employiez.*

2. *Envoyer*, makes in the future *j'enverrai*, &c.

3. *Puer*, makes in the present indicative *je pus*, other tenses are regular.

4. *Recouvrer*, makes in the participle passive *re-*

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
<i>J'allai.</i>	<i>J'irai.</i>	S. <i>Va, qu'il aille.</i> P. <i>Allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.</i>

être, mark that we are, or that we were yet in to express that we are, or that we were gone out *être*.

<i>Je m'en allai.</i>	<i>Je m'en irai.</i>	S. <i>Va-t-en, qu'il s'en aille.</i> P. <i>Allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en, qu'ils s'en aillent.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------	---

infinitives end in *er* preceded by *y*, and having their first and second persons plural of the imperfect indicative, *employions, vous employiez*. Subjunctive present. *Que*

tu pus, il put, nous puons, vous puez, ils puent. The

couverté, and not *recouvert*, as some would have it.

Of the SECOND

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>Bouillir.</i>	<i>bouillant.</i>	<i>bouilli.</i>	S. <i>Je bous.</i> P. <i>nous bouillons.</i>
<i>courir, or</i> <i>courre.</i>	<i>courant.</i>	<i>couru.</i>	S. <i>je cours.</i> P. <i>nous courons.</i>
<i>cueillir.</i>	<i>cueillant.</i>	<i>cueilli.</i>	S. <i>je cueille.</i> P. <i>nous cueillons.</i>
<i>dormir.</i>	<i>dormant.</i>	<i>dormi.</i>	S. <i>je dors.</i> P. <i>nous dormons.</i>
<i>faillir.</i>	<i>faillant.</i>	<i>failli*.</i>	- - - - -
<i>fuir.</i>	<i>fuyant.</i>	<i>fui.</i>	S. <i>je fuis.</i> P. <i>nous fuyons.</i>
<i>haïr.</i>	<i>haïssant.</i>	<i>haï.</i>	S. <i>je hais, tu hais,</i> <i>il haït.</i> P. <i>nous haïssons,</i> <i>vous haïssez,</i> <i>ils haïssent.</i>
<i>mourir.</i>	<i>mourant.</i>	<i>mort. être.</i>	S. <i>je meurs, tu</i> <i>meurs, il meurt.</i> P. <i>nous mourons,</i> <i>vous mourez,</i> <i>ils meurent.</i>
<i>ouïr.</i>	- - - - -	<i>ouï.</i>	- - - - -
<i>mentir.</i>	<i>mentant,</i>	<i>menti.</i>	S. <i>je mens.</i> P. <i>nous mentons.</i>
<i>acquérir†.</i>	<i>acquérant</i>	<i>acquis.</i>	S. <i>j'acquiers.</i> P. <i>nous acqué-</i> <i>rons.</i>

* *Note.* This verb is seldom used, but in the infinitive.

† It is used in the compound tenses, and is generally

‡ *Quérir* is only used in the infinitive, after the

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
<i>je bouillis.</i>	<i>je bouillirai, or bouillerai.</i>	<i>bous, qu'il bouille, &c.</i>
<i>je courus.</i>	<i>je courrai.</i>	<i>cours, qu'il coure, &c.</i>
<i>je cueillis.</i>	<i>je cueillerai.</i>	<i>cueille, qu'il cueille, &c.</i>
<i>je dormis.</i>	<i>je dormirai.</i>	<i>dors, qu'il dorme, &c.</i>
-----	-----	-----
<i>je suis.</i>	<i>je fuirai.</i>	<i>fuis, qu'il fuie, &c.</i>
-----	<i>je haïrai.</i>	<i>hais, qu'il haïsse,</i>
<i>je mourus.</i>	<i>je mourrai,</i>	<i>meurs, qu'il meure, mou- rons, mourez, qu'ils meurent.</i>
<i>j'ouïs.</i>	-----	-----
<i>mentis.</i>	<i>je mentirai.</i>	<i>mens, qu'il mente, &c.</i>
<i>j'acquis.</i>	<i>j'acquerrai.</i>	<i>acquiens, qu'il acquiere, &c.</i>

tive, preterite, and compound tenses.
followed by some other verb in the infinitive.
verbs, *aller, venir, envoyer.*

of

Of the SECOND

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>assaillir.</i>	<i>assaillant.</i>	<i>assailli.</i>	P. <i>nous assaillons,</i> <i>vous assaillez,</i> <i>ils assaillent.</i>
<i>tenir.</i>	<i>tenant.</i>	<i>tenu.</i>	S. <i>je tiens.</i> P. <i>nous tenons.</i>
<i>vêtir.</i>	<i>vêtant.</i>	<i>vêtu.</i>	S. <i>je vêts.</i> P. <i>nous vêtons,</i> <i>vous vêtez, ils</i> <i>vêtent.</i>

Note 1. That *couvrir, offrir, ouvrir, souffrir* are conjugated like *mentir*, except that *se repentir* takes *être* to

2. *Benir* is regular, has two participles *beni* and *gular*, and is only said of the benediction of God, as, *benit* is said of the benediction of men; as, *du pain*

3. *Conquérir* is seldom used but in the infinitive, the subjunctive *que je conquisse*, and in the compound

4. *Saillir*, signifying to jut out or project, is only used in the third persons, and when it signifies the same as *s'élancer* *s'élè-* commonly used only in the third persons, and may be

Of the THIRD

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>choir,</i> <i>déchoir.</i>	- - - - -	<i>chu.</i> <i>déchu,</i> (<i>être.</i>	- - - - - S. <i>je déchois.</i> P. <i>nous déchions.</i>
<i>échoir.</i>	<i>échéant.</i>	<i>échu</i> (<i>être.</i>	S. <i>j' échois.</i> P. <i>nous échions.</i>
<i>mouvoir.</i>	<i>mouvant.</i>	<i>mu.</i>	S. <i>je meus.</i> P. <i>nous mouvons,</i> <i>vous mouvez,</i> <i>ils meuvent.</i>

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
<i>j'assailis.</i>	<i>j'assailirai, or assaillerai.</i>	--- <i>qu'il assaille, &c.</i>
<i>S. je tins. Pn. tînmes v. tîntes, ilstinrent. je vêtis.</i>	<i>je tiendrai. je vêtirai.</i>	<i>tiens, qu'il tienne, &c. vêts, qu'il vête, &c.</i>

jugated like *courir*; and *sentir, se repentir* are conjugated like *venir*; and *tenir*.

benit, of which the feminine is *benite*. The first is *recet homme est beni de Dieu*, that man is blessed of God: *benit*, blessed bread; *de l'eau benite*, holy water, preterite of the indicative, *je conquis*, imperfect of tenses.

used in the infinitive, and third persons of both number *en l'air*, to cast or throw itself into the air; it is used in the compound tenses.

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
-----	-----	-----
<i>je déchus.</i>	<i>je décherrai.</i>	-----
<i>j'échus,</i>	<i>j'écherrai.</i>	-----
<i>je mus.</i>	<i>je mouvrai.</i>	---- <i>qu'il meuve, &c.</i>

of

Of the THIRD			
Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>pleuvoir.</i>	<i>pleuvant.</i>	<i>plu.</i>	Impersonal, <i>il pleut, il pleu-voit.</i>
<i>pouvoir.</i>	<i>pouvant.</i>	<i>pu.</i>	S. <i>je puis, tu peux, il peut.</i> P. <i>nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent.</i>
<i>savoir.</i>	<i>sachant.</i>	<i>su.</i>	S. <i>je sais</i> *. P. <i>nous savons.</i>
<i>seoir †.</i>	<i>seant, or seyant.</i>	<i>sis.</i>	S. <i>je sieds.</i> P. <i>nous seyons.</i>
<i>s'asseoir.</i>	<i>s'asseyant.</i>	<i>assis (être).</i>	S. <i>je m'assieds.</i> P. n. n. <i>asseyons.</i>
<i>surseoir ‡.</i>	<i>sursoyant.</i>	<i>surfis.</i>	S. <i>je sursois.</i> P. <i>nous sursoyons.</i>
<i>valoir.</i>	<i>valant.</i>	<i>valu.</i>	S. <i>je vau.</i> P. <i>nous valons.</i>
<i>voir §.</i>	<i>voyant.</i>	<i>vu.</i>	S. <i>je vois.</i> P. <i>nous voyons.</i>
<i>vouloir.</i>	<i>voulant.</i>	<i>voulu.</i>	S. <i>je veux.</i> P. <i>nous voulons.</i>

* We say sometimes *je sache* in the first person prenegation; as, *je ne sache rien de plus propre à former* know any thing more proper to form the judgement than *sache*, not that I know of.

† *Seoir*, to sit, or *être seant*, is only used in the third both significations it has no compound tenses, and even use of *s'asseoir*.

‡ This verb is more used in the compound tenses
§ *Pouvoir*, and *prévoir*, make in the future *je pour-*
je pourvus, and in the imperfect subjunctive *que je*

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
il plut.	il pleuvra.	---- qu'il pleuve.
je pus.	je pourai.	---- qu'il puisse.
je fus.	je saurai.	sache, qu'il sache. P. sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.
-----	je siérai.	sieds-toi, qu'il se seye, seyons- nous, &c.
je m'assis.	je m'assiérai.	assieds-toi, qu'il s'assye, as- seyons-nous, &c.
je surfis.	je surseoirai.	sursois.
je valus.	je vaudrai,	vaux, qu'il vaille, &c.
je vis.	je verrai.	vois, qu'il voie, &c.
je voulus.	je voudrai.	-----

sent of the indicative; but it is only when there is a
le jugement que l'étude des mathématiques, I do not
the study of the mathematics; or in non pas que je

persons; it makes in the participle active *seyant*. In
in this last it is often impersonal. Instead of *seoir* make

than the simple, *j'ai, j'avois, j'eus, surfis.*

voirai, je prévoirai. *Pouvoir* makes in the preterite
pourvusse.

Of

Of the

FOURTH

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>Battre.</i>	<i>battant,</i>	<i>battu.</i>	S. <i>je bats.</i> P. nous <i>battons.</i>
<i>boire.</i>	<i>buvant.</i>	<i>bu.</i>	S. <i>je bois.</i> P. nous <i>buons.</i>
<i>braire.</i>	- - - - -	- - - - -	S. <i>il brait.</i> P. ils <i>braient.</i>
<i>bruire,</i>	<i>bruyant or</i>	<i>bruisant.</i>	Imperf. Indic. <i>il</i>
<i>circoncire,</i>	- - - - -	<i>circoncis.</i>	S. <i>je circoncis.</i> P. nous <i>circonçons.</i>
<i>clorre, or</i> <i>clore.</i>	- - - - -	<i>clos.</i>	S. <i>je clos, tu clos,</i> <i>il clôt.</i> rest ob- solete.
<i>éclorre, or</i> <i>éclore.</i>	- - - - -	<i>éclos, être.</i>	S. <i>il éclôt, ils é-</i> <i>closent.</i> rest ob- solete.
<i>conclure, or</i> <i>conclurre.</i>	<i>concluant.</i>	<i>conclu.</i>	S. <i>je conclus.</i> P. nous <i>concluons.</i>
<i>confire.</i>	<i>confisant.</i>	<i>confit.</i>	S. <i>je confis.</i> P. nous <i>confisons.</i>
<i>connoître.</i>	<i>connois-</i> <i>sant.</i>	<i>connu.</i>	S. <i>je connois.</i> P. n. <i>connoissons.</i>
<i>coudre.</i>	<i>cousant.</i>	<i>cousu.</i>	S. <i>je couds.</i> P. nous <i>cousons.</i>
<i>craindre.</i>	<i>craig-</i> <i>nant.</i>	<i>craint.</i>	S. <i>je crains.</i> P. nous <i>craignons.</i>
		The other	verbs in <i>aindre,</i>
<i>croire.</i>	<i>croyant.</i>	<i>cru.</i>	S. <i>je crois.</i> P. nous <i>croyons.</i>
<i>dire*.</i>	<i>disant.</i>	<i>dit.</i>	S. <i>je dis.</i> P. nous <i>disons, v. dites.</i> <i>ils disent.</i>
<i>écrire.</i>	<i>écrivant.</i>	<i>écrit.</i>	S. <i>j' écris.</i> P. nous <i>écrivons.</i>

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
<i>je battis.</i>	<i>je battrai.</i>	<i>bats, qu'il batte, &c.</i>
<i>je bus.</i>	<i>je boirai.</i>	<i>bois, qu'il boive, &c.</i>
-----	<i>il braira, ils brairont.</i>	the rest is wanting.
<i>bruyoit,</i>	<i>ils bruyoient.</i>	the rest is obsolete.
<i>je circon-</i>	<i>je circoncirai</i>	<i>circoncis, qu'il circonciſſe, &c.</i>
<i>cis.</i>	<i>je clôrai.</i>	<i>clos. ----- compound</i>
-----	<i>il écloſra, ils éclôront.</i>	tenſes uſed. but the compound tenſes are uſed.
<i>je conclus.</i>	<i>je conclurai.</i>	<i>conclus, qu'il conclue, &c.</i>
-----	<i>je confirai.</i>	<i>confis, qu'il confiſe, &c.</i>
<i>je connus.</i>	<i>je connoſtrai</i>	<i>connois, qu'il connoiſſe, &c.</i>
<i>je couſis.</i>	<i>je coudrai.</i>	<i>couds, qu'il couſe, &c.</i>
<i>je craig-</i>	<i>je craindrai.</i>	<i>crains, qu'il craigne, &c.</i>
<i>nis.</i>		
<i>eindre, and</i>	<i>oindre, fol-</i>	low the ſame rule.
<i>je crus.</i>	<i>je croirai.</i>	<i>crois, qu'il croie, &c.</i>
<i>je dis.</i>	<i>je dirai.</i>	<i>dis, qu'il diſe, diſons, dites, qu'ils diſent.</i>
<i>j'écrivis.</i>	<i>j'écrirai.</i>	<i>écris, qu'il écrive, &c.</i>

Of

Of the FOURTH

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative.
<i>faire.</i>	<i>fesant.</i>	<i>fait.</i>	S. <i>je fais.</i> P. n. <i>fefons, v. faites, ils font.</i>
<i>lire.</i>	<i>lisant.</i>	<i>lu.</i>	S. <i>je lis.</i> P. nous <i>lisons.</i>
<i>luire.</i>	<i>luisant.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	S. <i>je luis.</i> P. nous <i>luisons.</i>
<i>mettre.</i>	<i>mettant.</i>	<i>mis.</i>	S. <i>je mets.</i> P. nous <i>mettons.</i>
<i>moudre.</i>	<i>moulant.</i>	<i>moulu.</i>	S. <i>je mouds.</i> P. nous <i>moulons.</i>
<i>naître.</i>	<i>naissant.</i>	<i>né. être.</i>	S. <i>je nais.</i> P. nous <i>naïssons.</i>
<i>nuire.</i>	<i>nuisant.</i>	<i>nui.</i>	S. <i>je nuis.</i> P. nous <i>nuisons.</i>
<i>prendre.</i>	<i>prenant.</i>	<i>pris.</i>	S. <i>je prends.</i> P. nous <i>prenons.</i>
<i>rire.</i>	<i>riant.</i>	<i>ri.</i>	S. <i>je ris.</i> P. nous <i>riions.</i>
<i>rompre.</i>	<i>rompant.</i>	<i>rompu.</i>	S. <i>je romps.</i> P. n. <i>rompons.</i>
<i>foudre.</i>	-----	-----	-----
<i>âbfoudre.</i>	<i>absolvant.</i>	<i>absous.</i> (être.	S. j' <i>absous.</i> P. n. <i>absolvons.</i>
<i>dissoudre.</i>	<i>dissolvant.</i>	<i>dissous.</i> (être	S. <i>je dissous.</i> P. nous <i>dissolvons.</i>
<i>résoudre,</i>	<i>résolvant.</i>	<i>résolu,</i> (être.	S. <i>je résous.</i> P. nous <i>résolvons.</i>
<i>suffire.</i>	<i>suffisant.</i>	<i>suffi.</i>	S. <i>je suffis.</i> P. nous <i>suffisons.</i>
<i>suivre.</i>	<i>suivant.</i>	<i>suivi.</i>	S. <i>je suis.</i> P. nous <i>suivons.</i>
<i>traire.</i>	<i>trayant.</i>	<i>trait.</i>	S. <i>je traie.</i> P. nous <i>trayons.</i>

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
<i>je fis.</i>	<i>je ferai.</i>	<i>fais, qu'il fasse, faisons, faites, qu'ils fassent.</i>
<i>je lus.</i>	<i>je lirai.</i>	<i>lis, qu'il lise, &c.</i>
<i>je mis.</i>	<i>je mettrai.</i>	<i>mets, qu'il mette, &c.</i>
<i>je moulus.</i>	<i>je moudrai.</i>	<i>mouls, qu'il moule, &c.</i>
<i>je naquis.</i>	<i>je naîtrai.</i>	<i>qu'il naisse, &c.</i>
<i>je nuisis.</i>	<i>je nuirai.</i>	<i>nuis, qu'il nuise, &c.</i>
<i>je pris.</i>	<i>je prendrai.</i>	<i>prends, qu'il prenne, &c.</i>
<i>je ris.</i>	<i>je rirai.</i>	<i>ris, qu'il rie, &c.</i>
<i>je rompis.</i>	<i>je romprai.</i>	<i>romps, qu'il rompe, &c.</i>
.....		 is only used in the infinitive.
<i>je dissous.</i>	<i>je dissoudrai.</i>	<i>dissous, qu'il dissolve, &c.</i>
<i>je résolus.</i>	<i>je résoudrai.</i>	<i>résous, qu'il resolve, &c.</i>
<i>je suffis.</i>	<i>je suffirai.</i>	<i>suffis, qu'il suffise, &c.</i>
<i>je suivis.</i>	<i>je suivrai.</i>	<i>suis, qu'il suive, &c.</i>
<i>je traitai.</i>	<i>je traiterai.</i>	<i>trais, qu'il traie, &c.</i>

Of the FOURTH

Infinitives.	Part. act.	Part. pass.	Pres. Indicative;
vaincre,	vain-	vaincu.	S. je vaincs. P.
	quant.		n. vainquons.
vivre,	vivant.	vécu.	S. je vis. P. nous vivons.

* Note 1. *Contredire*, *dédire*, *interdire*, *médire* and plural of the present indicative, *vous contredisez*, *vous*

2. *Maudire* is regularly conjugated like *finir*, and

3. *Luire*, with its compounds are not used in the of the subjunctive.

4. *Résoudre*, makes *résolu*, or *résous* in the participle

5. *Tordre*, makes *tordu*, *tors*, or *tort*, in the participle
eu le cou tordu : du fil tors : de la soie torse : une bouche torte.

F R I R E, to fry.

Participle passive.

Frit, fried; being somewhat difficult, we shall give it at length.

Indicative MOOD.

Present.

S. *Je fris*, *tu fris*, *il frit*.

P. n. *fesons frire*, v. *faites frire*, ils *font frire*.

Im. *je fesois frire*, *tu fesois frire*, &c.

Pret. *je fis frire*, *tu fis frire*, &c.

Pret. Indef. *j'ai fait frire*, &c.

1. Plu-perf. *j'avois fait frire*, &c.

2. Plu-perf. *j'eus fait frire*, &c.

Fut. *je frirai*, *tu friras*, &c.

Fut. P. *j'aurai fait frire*, &c.

Con. P. *je frirois*, *tu frirois*, *il friroit*, &c.

Condit. past. *j'aurois*, *j'eusse fait frire*, &c.

Imperative

CONJUGATION.

Preterite.	Future.	Imperative.
<i>je vain-</i>	<i>je vaincrai.</i>	
<i>quis.</i>		
<i>je vécus.</i>	<i>je vivrai.</i>	<i>vis, qu'il vive, &c.</i>

prédire, compounds of *dire* make in the second person *dédisez, vous interdisez, vous médisez*, and *vous prédisez*. doubles the *s* in the tenses formed from the active par-

preterite of the indicative, imperative, nor imperfect

passive. *Résolu* is used when the verb signifies to de-transform, we use *réfous*, which has no feminine.

Participle passive, which are used differently. We say, *il a lonne torse : un bâton tort : une jambe torte : une*

Imperative MOOD.	Pret. <i>que j'aie fait frire, &c.</i>
Pref. <i>Fais frire, qu'il fasse frire, &c.</i>	Pret. p. <i>Que j'eusse fait frire, &c.</i>
Subjunctive MOOD.	Infinitive MOOD.
<i>Que je fasse frire, &c.</i>	Pref. <i>Frire.</i>
Imp. <i>Que je fisse frire.</i>	Pret. <i>avoir fait frire.</i>

Participle active.

Faisant frire.

Ayant fait frire.

CHAP. IX.

Of the ADVERB.

THE *adverbis* indeclinable, and is so called; because it more often signifies the circumstances or modifications of the verb, than of other words, and that in discourse it is almost always joined to the verb; as, *je vous aime tendrement*, I love you tenderly; *vous m'avez servi fidelement*, you have served me faithfully, &c.

Its signification is independent of what may either precede or follow it, and the most part of the adverbs are only abridged expressions which mark in one word what otherwise would require a preposition and a noun; as *sagement*, wisely; *prudemment*, prudently; *aujourd'hui*, this day, &c. that is to say *avec sagesse*, *avec prudence*, *en ce jour*, &c.

Adverbs may be divided either by *expression*, or *signification*. If divided by expression, they are simple and compound.

The *simple* are expressed in a single word, as, *hier*, yesterday; *justement*, justly; *beaucoup*, much, &c. And the *compound* require several; as, *pour le présent*, at present; *à l'avenir*, in time coming; *tour à tour*, by turns, &c.

When divided by signification, they are of seven kinds.

I. Of TIME.

Which expresses some circumstances or relations of time, as past, present, to come, and unspecified, and by which we can answer to the question *quand*, when?

For the Past.

Hier, yesterday.
avant-hier, day before yesterday
autrefois, formerly.
hier au soir, yesternight.

hier au matin, yesterday morning.
hier sur le tard, late yesterday.
anciennement, of old.
dernierement,

dernierement
aupar
depuis
l'autre
fraich
tantôt
nague

à présent
à cette
mainte
présen
tout à
ly.

demain
bientôt
tantôt
dans p
déform
doréna
forth
l'année
year
à l'ave

souven
d'abord
quelque
rareme
soudain
jamais
toujour
incessan

dernièrement, lately.

auparavant, before.

depuis peu,

l'autre jour,

fraichement,

tantôt,

naguères,

} lately.

déjà, already, yet.

au tems passé, formerly.

depuis un an, a year ago.

depuis long tems, long

since.

For the Present.

à présent,

à cette heure,

maintenant,

présentement,

tout à l'heure, immediate-

ly.

} just now.

} now, pre-

} sently.

} immediately.

incontinent, just now,

sur le champ,

à l'instant.

aujourd'hui, to-day.

de ce pas, instantly, forth-

with.

} forthwith.

For the Time to come.

demain, to-morrow.

bientôt, soon.

tantôt, by and by.

dans peu, in a little, shortly.

déformais, hereafter.

dorénavant, from hence-

forth.

l'année qui vient, next

year.

à l'avenir, in time coming.

ci-après, hereafter.

demain matin, to-morrow

morning.

après demain, after to-

morrow.

dans un an d'ici, in a year

hence.

en quinze jours d'ici, fif-

teen days hence.

le mois prochain, next month.

For the Time unspecified.

souvent, often.

d'abord, at first.

quelquefois, sometimes.

rarement, seldom.

soudain, suddenly.

jamais, never.

toujours, always.

incessamment, incessantly.

pour l'ordinaire, usually.

tard, late.

depuis, since.

continuellement, continual-

ly.

sans cesse, perpetually.

de bonne heure, betimes.

alors,
lors, } then.
pour lors, }
ensuite, afterwards, then.

de tems en tems, now and then.
de jour en jour, daily, from day to day.

II. Of PLACE, or SITUATION,

Which mark the difference of distances and situations, with respect to the person who speaks, or the things spoken of, and by which we can answer to the questions, *où?* *d'où?* and *par où?*

Ici, here.
là, there.
d'ici, from this.
de là, from thence.
par ici, this way.
par là, that way.
y, there.
près, near.
loin, far.
devant, before.
derrière, behind.
dedans, within.
dehors, without.
dessus, over.
dessous, under, below.
en haut, up, upstairs.
en bas, down, below stairs.
auprès, } near.
proche, }
ailleurs, elsewhere.
partout, every where.
céant, here, within.
nulle part, no where.
quelque part, somewhere.

à droite, to the right-hand.
à gauche, to the left-hand.
deçà, } on this side.
en deçà, }
en de là, on that side.
jusqu'ici, hitherto.
jusque là, as far as that.
plus outre, farther.
de côté, & d'autre, up and down.
de tout côté, on all sides.
de ce côté-ci, on this side.
de ce côté-là, on that side.
d'un côté & d'autre, about and about.
des deux côtés, on both sides.
à part, aside.
vis à vis, over-against.
à côté, aside.
ça & là, here and there.
par deçà, on this side.
par de là, on that side.
tout droit, straight along.

* * * *Où,* where? *d'où,* from whence? and *par où,* which way? are sometimes used as adverbs of place.

III. Of

III. *Of ORDER, or RANK,*

Which exprefs how things are ordered or arranged with one another, with respect to place.

<i>Premierement</i> , first, firstly.	<i>enfin</i> , finally.
<i>secondement</i> , secondly.	<i>à la fin</i> , at last.
<i>troisiement</i> , thirdly.	<i>de suite</i> , one after another.
<i>quatreiement</i> , fourthly.	<i>de file</i> , } in a file, one
<i>en premier lieu</i> , in the first place.	<i>à la file</i> , } after another.
<i>en second lieu</i> , in the second place.	<i>alternativement</i> , alternately.
<i>en troisieme lieu</i> , in the third place.	<i>tour à tour</i> , by turns.
<i>dernierement</i> , lastly.	<i>à la ronde</i> , round, about.
<i>en dernier lieu</i> , in the last place.	<i>pêle-mêle</i> , confusedly.
<i>devant</i> , before, foremost.	<i>de front</i> , } abreast.
<i>en ordre</i> , }	<i>de rang</i> , }
<i>par ordre</i> , } orderly.	<i>après</i> , after.
	<i>en foule</i> , in a crowd.
	<i>ensemble</i> , together.

IV. *Of QUANTITY, or NUMBER,*

Which mark any *quantity* or *number*, or the *price* and *value* of things, and by which we can answer to the question *combien*, how much? how many.

<i>Combien</i> , how much? how many?	<i>tant</i> , so much.
<i>assez</i> , enough, enow.	<i>trop</i> , too much,
<i>beaucoup</i> , much, many, a great deal.	<i>trop peu</i> , too little.
<i>tout à fait</i> , }	<i>un peu</i> , a little.
<i>entierement</i> , } wholly.	<i>tant soit peu</i> , but never so little.
<i>à demi</i> , by the half.	<i>force</i> , } a great deal,
<i>infiniment</i> , infinitely.	<i>quantité</i> , } much.
<i>peu</i> , little.	<i>guere</i> , but little.
	<i>pour moins</i> , for less.

<i>au moins,</i>	} at least.	<i>une fois, once.</i>
<i>du moins,</i>		<i>deux fois, twice.</i>
<i>à tout le moins,</i>		<i>trois fois, thrice.</i>
<i>à peu de chose près, within a small matter.</i>		<i>six fois, six times.</i>
<i>abondamment, plentifully.</i>		<i>dix fois, ten times.</i>
<i>à foison, largely.</i>		<i>cent fois, a hundred times.</i>
<i>tant, so much, near by.</i>		<i>mille fois, a thousand times.</i>
		<i>tant de fois, so many times.</i>

V. Of AFFIRMATION, NEGATION and DOUBT,

Which express the operations of the mind, when it affirms, denies or doubts,

For Affirmation.

<i>Oui, yes.</i>		<i>volontiers, willingly.</i>
<i>oui-dà, yes, forsooth.</i>		<i>soit, be it so.</i>
<i>oui vraiment, } yes in-</i>	} deed.	<i>d'accord, agreed.</i>
<i>oui en vérité, } </i>		<i>immanquablement, infalli-</i>
<i>certes, } </i>	} truly,	<i>bly.</i>
<i>assurément, } </i>		<i>en bonne foi, in good faith.</i>
<i>certainement, } surely,</i>		<i>si fait, yes.</i>
<i>pour certain, for certain.</i>		<i>sans faute, without fail.</i>
<i>sans doute, without doubt.</i>		<i>véritablement, truly.</i>
<i>en effet, in fact.</i>		<i>infailliblement, infallibly.</i>
<i>sans mentir, without lying.</i>		} to tell
<i>en conscience, in conscience.</i>		
<i>à la vérité, of a truth.</i>		} the
<i>indubitablement, undoubt-</i>		
<i>edly,</i>		<i>truth.</i>

For Negation.

<i>Non, ne, ni, pas, } </i>	} no, not.	<i>non-plus, neither.</i>
<i>non pas, point, } </i>		<i>en nulle façon, in no shape.</i>
<i>ne point.</i>		<i>aucunement, } not in</i>
<i>nullement, } by no</i>	} means.	<i>en aucune façon, } the least.</i>
<i>en nulle manière, } </i>		<i>ne rien, nothing.</i>
<i>point de tout, not at all.</i>		

<i>Peut-être</i> , perhaps.	<i>For Doubt.</i>
<i>cela se peut</i> , that may be.	like.
<i>probablement</i> , probably.	<i>par hazard</i> , by chance.
<i>aparament</i> , perhaps.	<i>si il arrivoit</i> , if it should happen.
<i>raisonnablement</i> , true	<i>par cas fortuit</i> , perchance.

VI. Of Comparison,

Which serve to compare one thing with another, with regard to *quality* or *quantity*; and as these may be either *equal*, *superior*, or *inferior* to one another in *quality* or *quantity*, so there are three kinds of comparison. Vide pages 86, 87, 88, 89, and 90.

Of Equality.

<i>Ainsi</i> , thus, so,	<i>pareillement</i> , in like manner.
<i>comme</i> , as, like.	
<i>de même</i> , so, in like manner.	<i>autant</i> , as much,
	<i>aussi</i> , as, as much.
<i>également</i> , equally,	<i>si</i> , so, &c.

Of Excess.

<i>Plus</i> , } more.	<i>mieux</i> , better.
<i>davantage</i> , }	<i>de mieux en mieux</i> , better and better.
<i>de plus</i> , by more.	
<i>pis</i> , worse.	

Of Defect.

<i>Moins</i> , less.	<i>à peu près</i> , nearly.
<i>presque</i> , } almost.	<i>pour le plus</i> , } at most.
<i>quasi</i> , }	<i>tout au plus</i> , }

VII. Of QUALITY or MANNER,

Which express *how*, or in *what manner* things are done, and by which we can answer to the question *comment*, how?

<i>justement</i> , justly.	<i>gallamment</i> , cleverly, gallantly.
<i>sagement</i> , wisely.	<i>prudemment</i> ,

<i>prudemment</i> , prudently.	<i>en moins de rien</i> , in a trice.
<i>civilement</i> , civilly.	<i>sens devant derriere</i> , pre-
<i>constamment</i> , constantly.	posterously.
<i>nonchalamment</i> , carelessly.	<i>sens dessus dessous</i> , topsy
<i>négligemment</i> , negligently.	turvy.
<i>mediocrement</i> , indifferent-	<i>à l'étourdie</i> , heedlessly.
ly.	<i>à la volée</i> , at random.
<i>vitement</i> ,	<i>par mégarde</i> , by oversight.
<i>promptement</i> ,	<i>peu à peu</i> , by little and little.
<i>subitement</i> ,	<i>pas à pas</i> , step by step.
<i>confusément</i> , confusedly.	<i>exprès</i> , purposely.
<i>brusquement</i> ,	<i>à contre-cœur</i> , unwillingly.
<i>témérairement</i> ,	<i>à tort</i> , wrongfully.
<i>précipitamment</i> ,	<i>à la mode</i> , in the fashion.
<i>modestement</i> , modestly.	<i>à propos</i> , seasonably, patly.
<i>sévèrement</i> , severely.	<i>à la Françoisise</i> , in the French
<i>sottement</i> , foolishly, stupid-	fashion.
ly.	<i>à l'Angloise</i> , in the English
<i>bien</i> , well.	fashion.
<i>mal</i> , ill.	<i>à califourchon</i> , astraddle.
<i>à merveille</i> , wonderfully	<i>à fleur d'eau</i> , between
well.	wind and water.
<i>à la hâte</i> , hastily.	<i>à fleur de terre</i> , level with
<i>tout à coup</i> , all of a sudden.	the ground.

R E M A R K S.

I. **A**DVERBS of *quality* or *manner* are almost as numerous as the nouns adjective; as the manner of being is expressed by adjectives, and the way of doing by adverbs, there is almost no manner of being which has not a reference to some way of acting; consequently almost every adjective has its adverb.

II. Adverbs of quality are generally formed from the *feminines* of adjectives by adding *ment*; as from *grande* comes *grandement*, from *douce* comes *doucement*; and the

the *e* which precedes *ment* is commonly mute, except in *aifément*, *aveuglement*, *commodément*, *communément*, *conformément*, *délibérement*, *démefurement*, *désespérement*, *désordonnement*, *déterminement*, *effrontement*, *énormément*, *expressement*, *figurement*, *importunement*, *impunément*, *incommodément*, *inconsidérément*, *indéterminément*, *inespérement*, *inopinément*, *malaisément*, *modérement*, *nommément*, *obsurément*, *obstinément*, *opiniâtrément*, *passionnement*, *posément*, *précisément*, *prématurément*, *privément*, *profondément*, *profusément*, *proportionnement*, *sensément*, *séparément*, *serrément*, *subordinément*; but this rule has four exceptions, for,

1. Adjectives ended in *ant* and *ent* form their adverbs by changing the *nt* into *mment*; as from *vaillant*, comes *vaillamment*; from *diligent*, comes *diligemment*, &c. except *lent* and *présent*, which follow the general rule.

2. When the adjectives end the masculine with an *é* shut, you only add *ment* to it; as from *aisé*, comes *aifément*; from *modéré*, comes *modérement*, &c.

3. In like manner if the adjectives end the masculine with *i* or *u* you only add *ment*; as from *infini*, comes *infiniment*; from *absolu*, comes *absolument*, &c.

4. *Gentil*, *gentille*, makes *gentiment*.

III. Adverbs of quality, like adjectives are susceptible of comparison; as, *richement*, *plus richement*, *le plus richement*, &c.

IV. *Y*, *où*, *d'où*, and *par où*, are adverbs when they express any circumstance of place; as, *vous y allez*, you go there; *où demeurez-vous*? where do you stay? *d'où vient-il*? from whence does he come? *par où a-t-il passé*? which way did he pass?

CHAP. X.

Of the PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are indeclinable, and are commonly put before the words which they govern. They may be divided by expression, or by signification.

When divided by expression they are either *simple*; as, *après, avec, dans, &c.* or *compound*, as *vis-à-vis de, à l'égard de, à la réserve de, &c.*

When divided by signification, they are of as many kinds as there are different affinities, or connexions between things. But, as it would be too tedious to make an exact division of them this way, we shall divide them according to the cases which they govern. Some of which govern the genitive or ablative, others the dative, and others the accusative,

1. Those which govern the genitive or ablative are,

A cause de, because of.
à couvert de, secure from.
à côté de, on the side of.
à l'égard de, with respect to.
à l'abri de, sheltered from.
à l'insu de, without the knowledge of.
à la réserve de, except, but.
à raison de, at the rate of.
au deça de, on this side.
au delà de, on that side.
au dessus de, over, &c.
au dessous de, under, &c.
au devant de, before.

au dehors de, out of, without.
au dedans de, in, within.
au tour de, about.
au travers de, cross, thro'.
au milieu de, in the midst of.
au péril de, at the hazard of.
au lieu de, instead of.
auprès de, near.
au prix de, at the rate of.
en dépit de, in spite of.
en présence de, in presence of.
hors de, out of.
loin de, far from.

le long de, along,	sur peine de, on pain of.
près de, } near to.	en faveur de, in favour of.
proche de, }	de peur, or }
vis-à-vis de, * over-against.	de crainte de, } for fear of.

* *Vis-a-vis* was formerly only a local preposition; but now it is used figuratively in the sense of *avec*; as,
L'homme le moins sot est muet vis-a-vis de Mr. de Voltaire.

L'homme le moins fier, cesse d'être modeste vis-à-vis d'une grande fortune.

Le cœur le plus indifférent ne seroit long-tems libre vis-à-vis d'une beauté si parfaite.

2. Those which govern the dative are,

jusqu'à, } 'till, to, even	conformément à, according to.
jusques à, } to.	
quant à, as for.	malheur aux, mischief on.
par rapport à, with respect to.	

3. Those which govern the accusative, which are very numerous are,

Après, } after.	envers, towards.
Après, }	environ, about.
attendu, seeing, provided.	excepté, }
avant, before.	hors, } except.
avec, with.	hormis, }
chez, by, with, at one's house.	malgré, } notwithstanding.
contre, against.	nonobstant, } standing.
dans, in, into.	moyennant, provided.
depuis, since.	outre, besides.
derrière, behind.	par, by.
de, from, so soon, &c.	parmi, among.
avant, before.	pendant, during.
durant, during.	pour, for, in order to.
en, in, into.	proche, near.
entre, between.	sans, without.
	selon, according to.

sous,

<i>sous</i> , under.		<i>à travers</i> , through, cross.
<i>suivant</i> , according to, pur-		<i>vers</i> , towards.
suant to.		<i>voici</i> , here is, behold.
<i>sur</i> , upon, on.		<i>voilà</i> , there is, behold.
<i>touchant</i> ,	} concerning, } touching.	<i>vu</i> , seeing.
		<i>sauf</i> , saving, &c.

R E M A R K S.

1. **T**HE adjective *prêt* is often abusively used instead of the preposition *près*, although they have both a different signification and regimen. The adjective *prêt* signifies ready, about to, disposed to, and governs the dative, or the preposition *à*; as, *je suis prêt à faire tout ce qu'il vous plaira*; *le canon est prêt à tirer*; *les armées étoient prêtes à en venir aux mains*: On the contrary the preposition *près*, signifies on the point of, and always governs the genitive, or the preposition *de*; as, *il est près de midi*; *cet homme est près de sa dernière heure*; *il est près de mourir*, &c.

2. Some authors make *vis-à-vis* govern the accusative; as, *il est logé vis-à-vis mes fenêtres*; but the French academy make it only govern the genitive, and say *il est logé vis-à-vis de mes fenêtres*.

3. *Proche* governs the accusative as well as the genitive; as, *il demeure proche le palais*, or *il demeure proche du palais*.

4. *Au travers*, is often confounded with *à travers*, by making them govern indiscriminately the genitive or accusative: however, *au travers* ought only to govern the genitive, and *à travers* only governs the accusative; as, *regarder au travers des vitres*, *au travers d'une lunette*, &c. or *à travers les vitres*, *à travers une lunette*, &c.

5. *Hors* governs the ablative, when it marks exclusion or separation; as *il est hors du royaume*, he is out

of the kingdom ; *une épée hors de son fourreau.* And it governs the accusative when it expresses exception ; as, *tous les juges furent de même avis hors le président.*

6. *Avant* is always a preposition when it marks priority of time or order ; as, *l'article se met avant le nom, &c.* And it is an adverb of place or time, when it marks motion and progress. It is commonly used with the adverbs *si, bien, trop, plus, assez, fort* ; as, *il ne faut pas étudier trop avant dans la nuit ; fouiller bien avant dans la terre, &c.*

7. *Devant*, is a preposition, when it signifies in presence of, opposite to, or when it marks priority of order ; as, *devant Dieu ; devant le temple ; il a le pas devant moi, &c.*

CHAP. XI.

Of the CONJUNCTION.

CONJUNCTIONS are indeclinable words which serve to connect the different parts of speech.

They may be divided by expression, or by signification.

When divided by expression, they are of two kinds, viz. *simple* ; as, *&, aussi, ou, &c.* or *compound* ; as, *à fin que, à condition que, si ce n'est que, &c.*

When divided by signification, they are of fourteen kinds.

I. The *copulative*, which serve to unite two terms, or propositions, under the same affirmation, or negation.

For Affirmation.

*&, and.
aussi, as, also.*

tant - - - - - que.

For Negation.

Ni, neither, nor.

non plus, neither.

II. The

II. The *disjunctive*, which mark partition and distinction in the sense of the things, about which we speak; they are,

Ou, or *soit*, whether, or.
ou bien, rather. *soit que*, whether.

III. The *adversative*, which serve to unite two propositions by marking opposition in the second with respect to the first, they are,

Mais, but. *néanmoins*, nevertheless,
cependant, however. *notwithstanding*.
pourtant, however.

IV. The *exceptive*, which restrain the generality of a proposition; they are,

Sinon, unless, except. *encore que*, although that.
si ce n'est que, unless. *à moins que*, unless, except.
quoique, although. *pour*, although.

V. The *conditional*, which express some condition whereon the effect of what was said before depends; they are,

Si, if. *à moins que*, unless.
quand, though. *bien entendu que*, } on condition.
pourvu que, provided that, *à condition que*, }
if. *à la charge que*, }
supposé que, on condition *au cas que*, } in case that.
that. *en cas que*, }

VI. The *suspensive* or *doubitative*, which serve to mark some suspension or doubt in the discourse; they are,

Si, } *quoi qu'il en soit*, however
savoir si, } if. *that be*.
c'est à savoir si.

VII. The *concessive*, which serve to mark that we agree to a thing; they are,

À la vérité, or a truth. *non pas que*, not that.
à la bonne heure que, so *ce n'est pas que*, it is not but.
much the better. *quoique*, }
quand, though. *encore que*, } although.
non que, not that.

VIII. The

VII.
better
Savoir
comme
comme

IX.
cord, c
are,
comme
de mên
ainsi,
ainsi q
aussi b
aussi pe

X. T
add to
it; the
D'ailleur
entre q
de plus,

au moind
du moind

XI. T
why we
Car, for
parcequ
comme,
à cause
attendu
vu que,
puisque,
pour quo
d'où vien

VIII. The *declarative*, which explain, or make us better understand any thing; they are,

Savoir, to wit.

comme, as.

comme par exemple, as for

example.

c'est à dire, that is to say.

IX. The *comparative*, which mark connection, concord, or parity between two terms or propositions; they are,

comme,

de même,

ainsi,

ainsi que,

aussi bien que, as well as.

aussi peu que, as little as.

so, as, in like manner.

autant que, as much as.

non plus que, no more than.

ni plus ni moins que, neither more nor less.

si - - - que, so - - - as.

en, like.

X. The *augmentative* and *diminutive*, which serve to add to what has been said, or to restrain and diminish it; the augmentative are,

D'ailleurs, besides.

outre que, besides that.

de plus, moreover.

au surplus, moreover.

encore, yet, still, again.

The diminutive are,

au moins,

du moins,

at least.

pour le moins, at least.

encore, yet, also.

XI. The *causative*, which mark the cause, or reason why we do a thing; they are,

Car, for.

parceque, because.

comme, as.

à cause que, because.

attendu que, } seeing that.

vu que,

puisque, seeing, since.

pour quoi? why?

d'où vient que, whence is

it that.

afin que, to the end that.

afin de, } in order to.

pour,

de peur que,

de peur de,

de crainte que,

or de,

si - - - que, so - - - that.

for fear

that.

XII. The

XII. The *conclusive*, which serve to draw an induction from a preceding proposition; they are,

Or, now.

done, therefore.

par conséquent, consequently.

ainsi, thus, so.

c'est pour quoi, } for which
cela étant, } reason.

c'est pour cela que, for that reason.

de sorte que,

en sorte que,

tellement que,

de manière que,

} so that.

XIII. These of *time and order*, which connect the discourse by some circumstance of time or order; they are,

Quand, }
comme, } when.

lorsque, }

dans le tems que, in the time that.

pendant que, }

tendis que, }

durant que, }

tant que, }

avant que, before.

} whilst
that.

depuis que, since.

dès que,

aussi-tôt que,

à peine, scarcely.

après que, after that.

cependant, in the mean time.

enfin,

à la fin, } in fine, at last.

XIV. The *transitive*, which serve in discourse to pass from one circumstance to another; they are,

Or, now.

en effet, in fact.

au reste, as to the rest.

à propos, with respect to
apropos.

après tout, after all.

Of the USES and different SIGNIFICATIONS of the CONJUNCTION QUE.

1. *Que* is a conjunction when it cannot be turned either by *lequel*, *la quelle*, or *quelle chose*, and consequently is neither a relative nor absolute pronoun.

2. Its most common use is to be put after a great many verbs; and then it serves as a passage to another verb.

verb
objec
telle
the
je cr
which
mind
est, l
propo
fues
lowed
or an
times
ral ru
Th
marki
the fo
est en
il vien
gative
lire, o
sitive,
tive;
pas qu
je cra
veux
3. I
tions.
4. I
rative,
que ch
&c.
5. I
mation
precati
que po
person
&c.

verb or proposition, which explains and illustrates the object; as when I say, *je crois que l'ame est immortelle; je doute que vous aimiez la vertu, &c.* It is by the conjunction *que*, that I connect with the verbs *je crois* and *je doute*, the following propositions, by which you know wherein the belief and doubt of my mind consists, as if I had said *je crois une chose qui est, l'ame est immortelle, je doute de la vérité de cette proposition, vous aimez la vertu*; from whence it ensues that the conjunction *que* ought always to be followed by another verb, which is sometimes put in one or another of the tenses of the indicative, and sometimes in one of those of the subjunctive, and the general rule to be observed in this case is,

That when the conjunction *que* comes after a verb marking affirmation or a kind of certainty, it governs the following verb in the indicative; as, *je sais qu' il est en peine; je conviens qu' il m'a payé; j' espere qu' il viendra, &c.*; but if it comes after a verb with a negative, or one that marks doubt, ignorance, fear, desire, or in one word, that does not express any thing positive, then it governs the following verb in the subjunctive; as, *je doute qu' il soit en peine; je ne conviens pas qu' il m'ait payé; je n' espere pas qu' il vienne; je crains qu' il ne meure; je souhaite qu' il finisse; je veux qu' il me satisfasse, &c.*

3. It is put after most part of the other conjunctions.

4. It always precedes the third persons of the imperative, without being governed by any other verb; as, *que chacun prenne sa place; que les soldats s'en aillent, &c.*

5. It is put at the beginning of the phrase in exclamations of repugnance, astonishment, indignation, imprecation, or of a wish; as, *que je trahisse mon cœur! que l'on n' ait pas eu plus de respect pour un si grand personnage! que je puisse mourir si je vous en impose!* &c.

Que is put,

1. For *afin que*; as, *approchez que je vous parle*, come near that I may speak to you.

2. For *combien*; as, *que vous êtes différent de ce que vous étiez autrefois*! how much you are different from what you was formerly!

3. For *autre chose sinon*, after the tenses of the verb *faire*; as, *vous ne faites que rire*, you do no other thing than laugh; *il ne fait que de sortir*, he is just now gone out.

4. For *dès que, aussi-tôt que*; as, *qu' il fasse le moindre excès, il est malade*, as soon as he does the least excess, he is sick.

5. For *sans que*; as, *il ne sauroit sortir qu' il ne s' enrume*, he cannot go out without getting cold.

6. For *depuis que*; as, *il y a huit jours qu' il est parti*, eight days have past since he departed.

7. For *& cependant*; as, *mon ennemi seroit le plus brave de tous les hommes, que je ne le craindrois pas*, my enemy would be the bravest of all men, and yet I would not fear him.

8. For *à moins que*; as, *je ne partirai pas que tout ne soit prêt*, I will not set out unless every thing be ready.

9. For *quoique*; as, *tout habile homme qu' il est, il n'a pu me répondre*, although he be an able man, he could not answer me.

10. For *pourquoi*; as, *que n'obéissez-vous à vos maîtres*? why do you not obey your masters?

11. For *comme*; as, *rempli qu' il étoit de ses préjugés, il ne voulut convenir de rien*, as he was full of his prejudices, he would not agree to any thing.

12. For *seulement* after the negative *ne*; as, *il n'a que vingt ans*, he is only twenty years of age.

13. For *besoin*, or *nulle chose*, if *que* coming after *ne* is followed by a pure infinitive; as, *je n'ai que faire de vos avis*, I have no need of your advices; *il n'a que voir là-dedans*, he needs only see into it.

14. *Que*

14. *Que* is put instead of *comme*, *lorsque*, *parceque*, *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, &c. When to propositions beginning with these words, you couple others under the same regimen by the help of the conjunction *&*; as, *comme l'armée étoit rangée, & qu'elle étoit prête à combattre*, as the army was ranged, and as it was about to fight; *quand vous aurez reconnu votre faute, & que vous l'aurez réparée?* when you will have owned your fault, and when you will have repaired it? *si vous le trouvez, & qu'il vous demande où je suis?* if you find him, and if he asks you where I am? &c.

C H A P. XII.

Of the INTERJECTION.

INTERJECTIONS are indeclinable words, which commonly have a relation to the person who speaks; they form a perfect sense by themselves, and bear that name, because, being put before, or in the middle of a discourse, they express the different motions and transports of the soul; such as,

1. *Of Joy.*

<i>Ah! ah!</i>	<i>ahi! ahi! ah! ahi! ah!</i>
<i>bon! well! good!</i>	<i>ha, ha, ha, hé, } il rit! he</i>
<i>ha! ha! ah!</i>	<i>ho, ho, ho, ho, } laughs.</i>
<i>quelle joye! what joy!</i>	

2. *Of Grief.*

<i>Helas! ah! alas! ah!</i>	<i>eh Seigneur! oh Lord!</i>
<i>Oh! mon Dieu! oh! my God!</i>	<i>O ciel! oh heaven!</i>

3. *Of Fear.*

<i>Bon Dieu! good God.</i>	<i>eh! eh! ah! ah!</i>
<i>Dame! firs.</i>	<i>ah! malheureux! ah! mi-</i>
<i>eh mon Dieu! ah my God!</i>	<i>serable!</i>
<i>misericorde! mercy!</i>	

4. Of Aversion.

<i>Fi, pouah, fy, fough.</i>	<i>ouais, edod, pshaw.</i>	
<i>fi le vilain, fy nasty.</i>	<i>audiantre, dewce take you.</i>	
<i>fi donc, fy then.</i>	<i>bagatelles,</i>	} stuff, trash.
<i>fain de vous, fy on you.</i>	<i>des sottises.</i>	

5. Of Admiration.

<i>Ouida! lackaday.</i>	<i>voyez! see.</i>
<i>ah! ouida! ah! marry!</i>	<i>o! o! o! oh!</i>
<i>beu! ah!</i>	<i>hom! hom! ho! ho!</i>

6. Of Pain.

<i>Ahi! ahi! ahi! ach!</i>	<i>O ciel! O heaven!</i>
<i>ah! oh! och!</i>	<i>auf! hey! och!</i>

7. To encourage.

<i>Alons, courage,</i>	} come on,	} Or sus, sus donc,	} come,
<i>ça, alerte,</i>			
<i>cheer up.</i>			
		<i>marche,</i>	<i>ho there,</i>

8. To warn or exhort.

Prenez garde, gare, take care.

9. To call.

<i>Hola, ho, ho, there.</i>	<i>hola, la femme, ho you wo-</i>
<i>hola, hé! ho, hey.</i>	<i>man.</i>
<i>hola, ho monsieur, ho sir.</i>	<i>parlez hei, speak you.</i>
<i>bue, fays the carter to the</i>	<i>hem, ho.</i>
<i>horse.</i>	

10. To silence.

<i>Chut, St. hush, hift.</i>	<i>paix là, peace there.</i>
<i>paix, peace.</i>	<i>silence, silence.</i>

11. *Imprecations.*

<i>Jarni, s' death.</i>	<i>par la mort non de diable,</i>	
<i>mardi, edod.</i>	<i>devil.</i>	
<i>morbleu, ecod.</i>	<i>peste, plague.</i>	
<i>parbleu, odbut.</i>	<i>soufre,</i>	} <i>odbut.</i>
<i>diable, dam.</i>	<i>ventrebleu,</i>	
	<i>ventresangris,</i>	

12. *To cry.*

<i>à l' aide, à l' aide, help,</i>	<i>mur der, murder.</i>
<i>help.</i>	<i>aux voleurs, aux voleurs,</i>
<i>au secours, au secours, as-</i>	<i>robbers, robbers.</i>
<i>sistance, assistance.</i>	<i>à l' assassin, à l' assassin,</i>
<i>au feu, au feu, fire, fire.</i>	<i>murder, assassination.</i>
<i>au meurtre, au meurtre,</i>	

13. *To shout.*

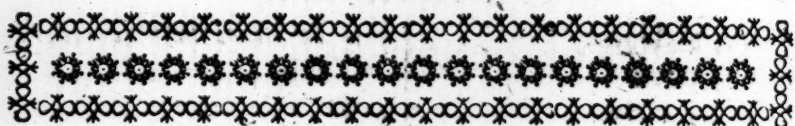
Vive le roi, vive la joie, vivat, huzza, huzza, huzza.

14. *To repress, check, &c.*

<i>Tout beau, tout doucement,</i>	<i>arrettez, hola, hold, give</i>
<i>softly.</i>	<i>over.</i>

15. *To cause repeat.*

Encore, bis, again.



A D D E N D A.

Of the Government and Use of the Moods and Tenses of Verbs.

THE government and use of the indicative and subjunctive moods being very considerable and difficult to distinguish, we shall here examine them as exactly as possible.

ARTICLE I.

Of the INDICATIVE MOOD, and its TENSES.

THE indicative is so called; because in all its tenses it indicates, or marks directly and positively what is signified by the verb; as, *j'aime*, I love; *je chantai*, I sang; *nous lirons*, we will read, &c.

Among the conjunctions which govern this mood are, *sinon que*, *si ce n'est que*, *bien entendu que*, *à condition que*, *à la charge que*, *de même que*, *ainsi que*, *aussi bien que*, *aussi peu que*, *autant que*, *non plus que*, *outré que*, *parce que*, *à cause que*, *attendu que*, *vu que*, *puis-que*, *c'est pour cela que*, *de sorte que*, *en sorte que*, *telle-ment que*, *de manière que*, *lorsque*, *dans le lems que*, *pendant que*, *tendis que*, *durant que*, *tant que*, *depuis que*, *dès que*, *aussi-tôt que*.

I. *Of the Present.*

The present serves to mark that a thing is, or is doing in the time wherein we speak.

Examples.

<i>Je suis malade.</i>	I am sick,
<i>Nous lisons l'écriture sainte.</i>	We read the sacred scripture.
<i>Je ne vous donne des avis que parce que je vous aime.</i>	I do not give you advice, but because I love you,

1. It is used instead of the preterite to mark an action or passion as past, in a strong, affecting and pathetic manner.

Examples.

<i>Le roi étant entré dans la ville, tous les bourgeois se mettent sous les armes, ils courent au devant de lui, on entend par tout le bruit du canon, &c.</i>	The king being entered into the town, all the citizens take arms, they run to meet him, the noise of cannon is heard every where.
<i>A peine sont-ils en pleine mer, que voilà une tempête furieuse qui s'élève tout à coup, &c.</i>	Hardly are they in the open sea, than behold a furious tempest arises all of a sudden.

* * * The present of the verbs *venir* and *faire* serves also to express an action that is past only some moments or a few hours ago.

Examples.

<i>Je viens de recevoir votre lettre.</i>	I have just now received your letter.
<i>Je ne fais que d'arriver de la campagne, où j'ai été ce mois passé.</i>	I am just now arrived from the country, where I have been this month past.
<i>Il ne fait que de sortir.</i>	He is just now gone out.
<i>Nous ne faisons que de nous lever.</i>	We are just now got up.

2. It

2. It is sometimes elegantly used for the future.

Examples.

Si vous leur rendez le commerce moins commode & moins utile, ils se retirent & ne reviennent plus.

If you render commerce less commodious and less useful to them, they will withdraw, and will no more return.

Elles donnent Lundi la collation à leurs amies.

They will give on Monday a collation to their female friends.

Il est en peu de tems la saint Jean.

It will soon be mid-summer.

II. *Of the Imperfect.*

This tense marks a thing as past with respect to the present, and shows that a thing was present in a time that is now past also.

Examples.

Balthazar étoit à table, lorsqu'il vit la main qui écrivoit sa condamnation.

Beltesbazzar was at table, when he saw the hand which wrote his condemnation.

Je me flattois de l'honneur de votre amitié, mais je trouve à cette heure que je me trompois.

I flattered myself with the honour of your friendship, but I now find that I deceived myself.

Quand j'étois en Hollande je dançois je fesois des armes, j'étudiois tous les jours, & je m'appliquois beaucoup aux mathématiques.

When I was in Holland I danced, I fenced, I studied every day, and I applied myself much to the mathematics.

1. It is used to mark an action, and a relation in its duration.

Examples.

Porus étoit vaincu; mais au lieu de se rendre,

Porus was vanquished; but instead of yielding,

il sembloit attaquer & non pas se défendre.

He seemed to attack and not to defend himself.

Ses

*Ses soldats à ses piés,
étendus & mourants,*

*Le mettoient à l'abri
de leurs corps expirants,*

*Là, comme dans un fort,
son audace enfermée :*

*Se soutenoit encore contre
toute une armée.*

*Et d'un bras qui portoit
la terreur & la mort,*

*Aux plus hardis guerriers,
en défendoit l'abord,*

*Je l'épargnois toujours,
&c.*

Racine, Alexandre.

His soldiers prostrate and
dying at his feet,

Screened him with their
expiring bodies,

There, as in a fortress,
his courage being shut up,

He supported himself still
against a whole army.

And with an arm which
bore in it terror and death,

Defended the approach
of the most intrepid warriors,

I spared him always, &c.

2. It is used also when we want to inform ourselves about any thing, when we interrupt an action of which we would be informed, and when we are deceived in the thoughts we formerly had.

Examples.

*Que fessiez-vous à la
cour ?*

*Où alliez-vous quand je
vous ai rencontré ?*

*Qu' écriviez-vous hier
au soir ?*

*Je ne savois pas que vous
fussiez là.*

What was you doing at
court ?

Where was you going
when I met you ?

What was you writing
yesternight ?

I did not know that you
was there.

3. Finally it is used with the conjunction *si*, commonly followed by the conditional present.

Examples.

*Si je fesois cela que di-
riez-vous ?*

*Si vous parliez souvent
François vous apprendriez
mieux.*

If I did that what would
you say ?

If you often spoke French
you would learn much bet-
ter.

III. *Of the Preterite.*

The preterite marks a thing past in a time of which none now remains, and in which we no longer are.

Je rendis mes comptes à monsieur l'intendant il y a deux semaines.

Il vous écrivit hier son sentiment sur cela.

Il sortit en colere, & le laissa seul ronger son frein.

I gave in my accompts to the steward two weeks ago.

He wrote you yesterday his opinion concerning that.

He went out in wrath, and left him alone to gnaw his bit.

1. It is much used in narrating things past; and is therefore often called the narrative, or historical tense.

Examples.

Les Romains ayant envoyé Fabius contre Hanibal; ce sage général leva de belles troupes, se tint toujours sur ses gardes, & fit tant par sa vigilance, qu'il remporta de grandes victoires sur ce guerrier qui sembloit jusqu'alors invincible.

Cassius & Brutus poignarderent César au milieu du sénat.

The Romans having sent Fabius against Hanibal; that wise general raised fine troops, always kept on his guard, and was so vigilant, that he gained great victories over that warrior, who seemed, 'till then, invincible.

Cassius and Brutus stabbed Cesar in the midst of the senate.

* * * The preterite must only be used to mark a time distant, at least, one day from that wherein you speak; and it is not enough that the time of which you speak be distant more than one day, but none of it must remain.

IV. *Of the Preter-indefinite.*

The preter-indefinite, marks a thing as past in a time which we do not name, or in a time specified, of which there still remains a part.

Examples.

Les
été la
miers
F
& je l
Il n
lard q

Thi
but all
likewi

Fa
que vo
Les-b

les arm
arrivé

Il j
ne dev
à Dres
rus, p
que pa

1. T
followe

Qua
lettres

Je
que j
faires.

Au
gu l'un
tre.

2. V
by the

Je n
tois si

Examples.

Les fruits de la terre ont été la nourriture des premiers hommes.

J'ai cherché la paix, & je l'ai trouvé.

*Il n'a jamais été si gail-
lard qu'il est à présent.*

The fruits of the earth were the food of the first men.

I have sought for peace, and I have found it.

He hath never been so chearful as he is at present.

V. Of the First Preter-pluperfect.

This tense marks a thing as not only past in itself, but also as past with respect to something else, which is likewise past.

Examples.

J'avois été malade lorsque vous m'écrivîtes.

Les bourgeois avoient pris les armes quand le roi est arrivé.

Il semble qu'Hermione ne devoit pas s'en prendre à Oreste de la mort de Pyrrus, puisqu'il ne l'avoit tué que par son ordre.

I had been sick when you wrote to me.

The citizens had taken arms when the king arrived.

It seems that Hermione ought not to blame Orestes for the death of Pyrrus, seeing he had not killed him but by her order.

1. This tense is often used along with the imperfect, followed or preceded by some conjunction.

Quand j'avois écrit mes lettres je sortois.

Je me divertissois, dès que j'avois fait mes affaires.

Aussi-tôt que j'avois reçu l'un, je lui donnois l'autre.

When I had written my letters I went out.

I diverted myself, as soon as I had done with my affairs.

As soon as I had received the one I gave him the other.

2. Verbs and nouns, marking doubt, and followed by the conjunction *si* govern this tense.

Examples.

Je ne savois pas, je doutois si vous aviez dit cela.

I did not know, I doubted if you had said that.

Je

Je n'étois pas informé, assuré, ni certain si vous étiez venu.

Il étoit en suspens; en doute si vous aviez écrit à votre frere.

I was not informed, assured, nor certain if you were come.

He was in suspense, in doubt if you had written to your brother.

VI. Of the Second Preter-pluperfect.

The second preter-pluperfect expresses an action or a thing past, before another, in a past time.

Examples.

Quand j'eus reçu mon argent je m'en allai.

Aussi-tôt que j'en eus parlé au roi, il envoya un courier exprès à la cour d'Espagne.

Dès que je fus entré il courut m'embrasser.

When I had received my money I went away.

As soon as I had spoken of it to the king, he sent a courier express to the court of Spain.

As soon as I was entered he ran to embrace me.

1. It is used like the preterite to express a time entirely past and definite, marked by some prefixed term.

Examples.

Je partis hier pour Londres aussi-tôt que je fus revenu d'Oxford.

Les Russiens commencèrent à piller les villes, peu de tems après qu'ils eurent déclaré la guerre.

La France révoqua, le siècle passé, l'édit de Nantes, après qu'elle eut persécuté à outrance les Reformés.

I set out yesterday for London as soon as I was returned from Oxford.

The Russians began to pillage the towns, soon after they had declared war.

France revoked, last century, the edict of Nants, after it had persecuted violently the Protestants.

VII. Of the Future.

This tense simply marks that a thing will happen in a time which is not yet come.

Examples.

J'aurai de l'argent demain.

I will have money tomorrow. *Nous*

Nous recevrons des lettres dans quinze jours.

Nos corps ressusciteront au dernier jour.

Je ferai que vous ne vous plaigniez point de moi.

We will receive letters in fifteen days.

Our bodies will rise at the last day.

I will behave in such a manner that you may not complain of me.

There are verbs, which though in the present indicative, often govern the future.

Examples.

Je crois, je pense, je m'imagine que monsieur viendra demain; & d'ailleurs je compte, je dis qu'il s'en retournera d'abord.

J'espere, je me flatte, je m'assure que vous m'accorderez une faveur car je sais, je conclus (de ce que j'ai déjà vu) que vous ne me refuserez pas une grace.

Je ne suis pas certain, ni sûr si mon frere, partira aujourd'hui: je suis aussi incertain & en doute si je partirai moi-même.

I believe, I think, I imagine that Mr. will come to-morrow: and besides I count, I say that he will return immediately.

I hope, I flatter myself, I am sure that you will grant me a favour: for I know, I conclude (from what I have already seen) that you will not refuse me a kindness.

I am not certain, nor sure if my brother will depart to-day: I am also uncertain, and in doubt if I will depart myself.

VIII. *Of the Future past.*

This tense marks an action as future with respect to the present; and marks also the action as past with respect to the simple future which often follows it.

Examples.

Quand j'aurai fini mes affaires je vous irai voir.

When I will have ended my business I will go to see you.

Aussi-

*Aussi-tôt que nous aurons
soupe nous nous coucherons.*

*Quand j'aurai écrit mes
lettres, nous irons ensemble
à la promenade.*

So soon as we will have
supped we will go to bed.

When I will have writ-
ten my letters, we will go
walk together.

This tense is also used to mark that we will have
finished the action or thing in question, in a certain
time, which we define by some adverb, &c.

Examples.

Il aura achevé tantôt.

He will have done by
and by.

*Nous aurons empaqueté
demain comme je l'espère.*

We will have packed to-
morrow I hope.

*Vous pouvez compter
qu'il aura vendu tout le
reste bien-tôt.*

You may count that he
will soon have sold all the
rest.

IX. Of the Conditional present.

The conditional present, in its most ordinary signifi-
cation, marks that a thing would happen in the present
time, if something did not intervene.

Examples.

*Nous serions heureux, si
Adam n'eut pas péché.*

We would be happy, if
Adam had not sinned.

*Si j'avois du bien je me
promenerois, & je me di-
vertirois honnêtement tous
les jours.*

If I had means I would
walk, and I would divert
myself civilly every day.

*Quand vous parleriez le
langage de tous les hom-
mes, & quand vous posse-
deriez toute la terre vous
ne seriez pas content.*

Tho' you should speak the
tongue of all men, and tho'
you should possess all the
earth you would not be con-
tent.

i. It is used to mark a wish.

Examples.

*Je voudrois bien rencon-
trer cet homme, je le tirail-
leroie comme il faut, je le*

I would chuse much to
meet that man, I would
hale him about as he ought,
jet-

jettero
fouler

Je
que ch
lontier

2. T
by si,

Je n
je dout

Je n
vous p
&c.

Nou
écrier

3. T
compo
conjun

Je c
cru, j'a
que vo

Nous
attendi
tions q
vos am

Il c
préhena
bloient
ne vien

* *
thing y
add pas
eriez pa

jetterois par terre, je le
foulerois aux piés.

I would throw him on the
ground, I would trample
him under foot.

Je mangerois bien quel-
que chose, & je boirois vo-
lontiers un coup de vin.

I could eat something,
and would willingly drink
a draught of wine.

2. The verbs and nouns which mark doubt, followed
by *si*, govern this tense.

Examples.

Je ne savois pas, & meme
je doutois si vous viendriez.

I did not know, and I
even doubted if you would
come.

Je n'étois pas certain si
vous partiriez aujourd'hui,
&c.

I was not certain if you
would depart to-day.

Nous doutions si vous
écrieriez ou non.

We doubted if you would
write or not.

3. The imperfect, and all the preterites simple or
compound of the ensuing verbs, being followed by the
conjunction *que* govern this tense.

Examples.

Je croyois, je crus, j'ai
cru, j'avois cru, j'eus cru,
que vous me tromperiez.

I believed, I did believe,
I have believed, I had be-
lieved that you would de-
ceive me.

Nous esperions, nous nous
attendions, nous nous flat-
tions que vous écrieriez à
vos amis.

We hoped, we expected,
we flattered ourselves that
you would write to your
friends.

Ils craignoient, ils ap-
préhendoient, & ils trem-
bloient de peur que vous
ne viendriez.

They feared, they dread-
ed, and they trembled for
fear that you would not
come.

* * It is in this manner you must speak, if it is a
thing you would not wish for; but if it is, you must
add *pas*; for example, *je craignois que vous ne vien-*
driez pas.

X. *Of the Conditional past.*

This tense marks, that an action, or a thing would have happened in a time past, if certain conditions had taken place.

Examples.

J'aurois, ou j'eusse appris la géographie si vous eussiez voulu.

Si j'eusse su cela, je vous l'aurois ou je vous l'eusse dit.

Si je n'étois pas encore venu, m'auriez ou m'eussiez-vous attendu.

I would have learned geography, if you had chosen it.

If I had known that, I would have told it to you.

If I had not come yet, would you have waited for me.

A R T I C L E II.

Of the Imperative M O O D.

THIS mood expresses our action of commanding, forbidding, exhorting, or intreating, and is present with respect to the action of commanding, and future with regard to the thing commanded.

Examples.

Rendez témoignage à la vérité, & craignez Dieu plus que les hommes.

Ne négligez pas les règles de la langue Française.

Soyez soumis aux puissances de la terre.

Songez, malheureux, à apaiser la colère de Dieu.

*** The future of the indicative expresses a command, or prohibition, as in the decalogue.

Examples.

Vous aimerez Dieu de tout votre cœur.

Vous ne tuerez point.

Vous ne paillarderez point.

Give testimony to the truth, and fear God more than men.

Do not neglect the rules of the French language.

Be subject to the powers of the earth.

Think wretch on appeasing the wrath of God.

You shall love God with all your heart.

You shall not kill.

You shall not commit whoredom.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE III.

Of the Subjunctive MOOD.

THIS mood is so called, as it is always used after some words on which it depends, and with which it is thought to be joined. It is commonly found after other verbs followed by the conjunction *que*; or if there are no verbs, *que* is almost always to be found: and for that reason I have added it in the tenses of this mood.

The conjunctions which govern the verb in the subjunctive; are,

Soit que, sinon que, si ce n'est que, quoique, bien que, encore que, à moins que, pourvu que, supposé que, au cas que, en cas que, à la bonne heure que, non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que, afin que, de peur que, de crainte que, avant que.

There are some conjunctions which equally govern the indicative and subjunctive, as *sinon que, si ce n'est que, de sorte que, en sorte que, tellement que, de manière que*, and this difference proceeds from the verbs by which they are preceded; for, if the verbs express command, desire, or an uncertainty, these conjunctions govern the subjunctive: but if they express any thing certain and positive, they then govern the indicative.

* * *Quoique* always governs the subjunctive.

The subjunctive differs from the indicative two ways,
1. The tenses of the subjunctive only affirm indirectly, being always subject to a direct and principal affirmation, which can only be made by the tenses of the indicative, as in *je veux que vous fassiez votre devoir*, I will that you do your duty; *je veux*, expresses a direct affirmation and independant of every other: whereas the affirmation expressed by *vous fassiez* is only indirect and subject to the first.

2. The tenses of this mood are so dependant on the

words or conjunctions which precede them, that if they be disunited, they will not have any determinate meaning, nor consequently form a simple affirmation: whereas the tenses of the indicative are either not preceded by any word, or if they come after conjunctions they may be taken away, and yet make a clear and determinate meaning; as, *je crois que nous irons à Rome*, I believe we will go to Rome. If you retrench *je crois que*, the rest *nous irons à Rome* presents to the mind a clear and determinate sense, which can be understood independant of the other words.

§†§ When the conjunctions preceded by a verb in the present, require in the verbs by which they are followed, a signification somewhat doubtful, or of the time to come, and which do not express a thing actually present, these verbs are put in the subjunctive; as, *je dispose tout afin que vous alliez à la campagne*, I dispose every thing that you may go to the country; *je lui pardonne, pourvu qu'il soit plus raisonnable*, I pardon him, provided he be more reasonable, &c. the second verbs are in the subjunctive, because the conjunction *que* announces in them a signification of doubt, or of a time to come.

By the same reason, verbs are often put in the subjunctive, when the conjunction *que* which governs them, comes after a verb of interrogation, or which has a negation along with it, as in *pensez-vous qu' en formant la république des abeilles, Dieu n' ait pas voulu instruire les rois à commander avec douceur, & les sujets à obéir avec amour?* Do you think that in forming the republic of bees, God has not intended to instruct kings to command with mildness, and subjects to obey with love? &c.

The relative pronouns *que, qui, &c.* also govern the following verb in the subjunctive; as, *il n'y a point dans le cœur de l'homme de bons mouvements que Dieu ne produise, comme auteur de tout bien*, there are not in the heart of man any good movements which God does

not

not produce, as the author of all good; and in these verses of *Racine*.

*Depuis trois ans entiers, qu' a-t-il dit, qu' a-t-il fait,
Qui ne promette à Rome un empereur parfait ?*

These three whole years, what has he said, what has (he done,

That does not promise to Rome a perfect emperor?

RULES to point out in what Tenses of the Subjunctive a Verb ought to be put.

I. **WHEN** the verb, which is before the conjunction, is in the present or future of the indicative, and when you have not to express by the second, a thing past; the second must be put in the present of the subjunctive.

Examples.

*Les nouveaux philosophes
veulent que la couleur soit
un sentiment de l'ame.*

The new philosophers
will have colour to be a
sensation of the soul.

*J'attendrai que la belle
saison revienne.*

I will wait 'till the fine
season return.

*Comportez vous de ma-
niere que vous vous fassiez
estimer.*

Behave yourself in such
a way that you may make
yourself to be esteemed.

II. When the verb, which precedes the conjunction, is in any of the past or conditional tenses, and when you have not to mark by the second, a time past more remote than the first; the second must be put in the imperfect of the subjunctive.

Examples.

*Les Egyptiens ne dou-
toient pas que certains ani-
maux & certaines plantes
ne fussent des divinités.*

The Egyptians did not
doubt that certain animals
and certain plants were
deities.

Caligula voulut que les Romains lui rendissent des honneurs divins.

Dieu a permis que les infideles profanassent les lieux saints.

Caligula wanted that the Romans should pay him divine honours.

God permitted that the infidels should profane the holy places.

III. The preterite of this mood is to be used, when you want to speak of a thing past, and accomplished with respect to the tense of the verb, which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is commonly the present, preter-indefinite, or the future of the indicative.

Examples.

Je doute qu' aucun philosophe ait jamais bien connu l'origine des vents.

Il a fallu que j'aie sollicité tous mes juges.

Je n'entreprendrai rien que je n'aie consulté des personnes sages, &c.

I doubt if any philosopher hath ever rightly known the origin of the winds.

I behoved to solicit all my judges.

I will undertake nothing 'till I have consulted wise persons.

IV. The pluperfect is used to mark a thing absolutely past and accomplished; but that is only after a verb in the imperfect, preterite, preter-pluperfect of the indicative, or in one of the two conditionals.

Examples.

Vous ne crûtes pas, ou vous n'avez pas cru qu'on vous eût tendu un piège.

Nous avions ignoré que le Roi vous eût accordé cette grace.

Vous trouveriez mauvais, ou vous auriez trouvé mauvais que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.

You did not believe that they had laid a snare for you.

We did not know that the king had granted you that favour.

You would have taken it ill if we had gone against your orders.

REMARKS

R E M A R K S.

1. **T**HERE are some occasions wherein, in order to express by the subjunctive an action or thing past and accomplished, in a past time, the auxiliary *avoir* must be doubled; as in *quelque diligence que vous eussiez pu faire, je ne pensois pas que vous eussiez eu dîné avant midi.*

2. The first tense of the subjunctive is called present, or future, because it is used as often in the sense of the one, as in that of the other. It is present in *croyez-vous qu'il soit en chemin?* that is to say, *croyez-vous qu'il est en chemin?* And it is future in this, *je ne crois pas qu'il vienne demain;* that is to say, *je ne crois pas qu'il viendra demain.*

A R T I C L E IV.

Of the Infinitive M O O D.

THE infinitive is sometimes taken as a noun, but it is, however, different from it, for it retains the regimen of the verb, has no genders, and cannot be joined with an adjective. It is declined only in the singular, with the indefinite article thus,

Nom. and Accus. *Lire*, reading.

Gen. and Abl. *De lire*, of, or by reading.

Dative. *A lire*, to reading.

The use to be made of these cases is,

Nom. *Lire est une bonne occupation*, reading is a good occupation.

Gen. *J'ai envie de lire l'histoire ancienne*, I have a desire to read, or of reading the ancient history.

Dat. *Je passe mon tems à lire*, I spend my time in reading.

Accus. *Je veux lire*, I chuse to read.

Abl. *Je viens de lire*, I have just now read.

R E M A R K S.

1. **W**HAT is called the present in this mood, does not refer to any determinate time, and may therefore be used according to the circumstances of the discourse, as well for the past and future, as for the present. In *vous me voyez écrire*; *écrire* refers to the present: in *vous m'avez vu écrire*, it refers to the past: and in *vous me verrez écrire*, it refers to the future.

2. When you would express by the infinitive a time past, with respect to the tense of the preceding verb, you must use the passive participle, to which you join, either the infinitive *avoir*, or *être*, according to the nature of the verbs; as, *vous me paraissez avoir perdu votre argent*; or *j'ai cru être arrivé trop tard*, &c.

3. To express by this mood a future, with respect to the tense of the preceding verb, you must join the infinitive *devoir* to that of the verb you are to use; as, *je croyois devoir suivre ce procès*, or *je crois devoir suivre, ce procès*, &c.

4. The conjunctions which resemble prepositions, and which are only distinguished from them by being followed by a verb, govern that verb in the infinitive; they are *pour*, *après*, *jusqu'à*, and those ended by *de*, as *afin de*, *de peur de*, *avant que de*, &c. Examples. *Je travaille pour gagner le ciel*; *il faut se reposer après avoir étudié*; *il est avare jusqu'à se refuser le nécessaire*; *si je m'applique tant à l'étude, c'est afin de vous surpasser*; *évitez le jeu de peur d'en faire une passion*; *il faut prier Dieu avant que de se mettre au travail*.

5. Verbs are designed by the infinitive present, as nouns are by the nominative singular. Thus we say the verb *aimer*, the verb *finir*, &c. as we say the noun *prince*, and the noun *palais*, &c.

A R T I C L E

ARTICLE V.

of PARTICIPLES and GERUNDS.

THE participle is so called, because it participates of the nature of the adjective, and that of the verb.

It participates of the nature of the adjective, when it is joined to, or agrees with a noun substantive, expressed or understood, of which it marks some quality or attribute.

It participates of the nature of the verb, when it retains its signification and regimen with designation of time, and is only different from it in this, that it marks its attribute without affirmation, and consequently without designation of persons.

The Participles are,

1. The active ending always in *ant*, and indeclinable.
2. The passive ended according to the conjugation they are of.

of ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

WE call active participles, those which end in *ant* with their preterites, as in active verbs, and part of the neuter, they signify the subject as producing, or as having produced an action.

Examples.

Examples.

J'ai trouvé ces femmes faisant bonne chere, & les filles se divertissant avec les garçons.

Je les ai vu à table, mangeant, buvant, & se réjouissant les uns avec les autres.

Les fideles ayant aimés, ayant cheris, & ayant protégés les malheureux, qu'avoient-ils à craindre ?

Mes amis étant arrivés & ayant connus mon dessein, &c.

I found these women making good cheer, and the girls diverting themselves with the boys.

I saw them at table, eating, drinking, and making merry with one another.

The faithful having loved, having cherished, and having protected the miserable, what had they to fear ?

My friends being arrived, and having known my design.

As producing the action.

As having produced it.

There are active participles of some neuter verbs, which, on certain occasions, change their terminations according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they refer; such as *approchant, dépendant, tendant, usant, jouissant, répugnant*, and a few more.

Examples.

Une étoffe approchante de la vôtre.

Les villages dépendants d'une seigneurie.

Une requête tendante à la cassation d'un arrêt.

Des filles majeures usantes & jouissantes de leurs droits.

Une humeur répugnante à la mienne.

A stuff something like yours.

The villages depending on a lordship.

A petition tending to the repealing of an act.

Girls of age using and enjoying their rights.

A humour repugnant to mine.

Of

OF PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

PASSIVE participles express the action of the verb as received, and have the same regimen as passive verbs.

They may be accounted adjectives, as they commonly express a quality or a passive attribute; when they refer to a noun-substantive, and when they are susceptible of genders and numbers.

The use of the participles passive in the conjugation of verbs, is to form all their compound tenses with the auxiliaries *avoir* or *être*, and their signification varies according to the nature of the verbs on which they depend.

1. These of active verbs have a passive signification, when they are used simply as adjectives of some nouns without affirmation, or when, preceded by some tenses of *être*, they form the kind of verbs which we called passive. So in *un ennemi vaincu*; the signification of *vaincu* is passive, because it is simply the adjective of *ennemi*; and it has the same signification in *l'ennemi fut vaincu*; because it is preceded by *fut* preterite of *être*.

2. They cease to have a passive signification, when they form with *avoir*, the compound tenses either of active or neuter verbs; as, *j'ai vaincu*; *j'ai agi*. This observation respects equally the participles of *impersonal*, *reflected* and *reciprocal verbs*, wherein *être*, which forms their compound tenses, is simply put for *avoir*.

3. The passive participles of *neuter verbs* conjugated with *être*, have commonly an active signification, referred to a past time, which makes them present without

out the assistance of the auxiliary, a determinate idea, and they may be joined to a noun as adjectives or attributes. So *venu, monté, descendu, tombé, &c.* mean somebody who has performed the action of *coming, mounting, descending, and who has fallen*, since we can say, *un homme venu de loin; un couvreur monté sur le toit; un ange descendu du ciel; un enfant tombé dans une rivière, &c.*

As participles are sometimes declinable and sometimes not, we shall give you the following general rules.

RULE I. The passive participles are commonly indeclinable, when they are preceded by the tenses of *avoir*.

Examples.

Les grands princes ont toujours protégé les sciences. Great princes have always protected the sciences.

Elle a plus cheri ses richesses que ses belles qualités. She has valued more her riches than her fine qualities.

Ce pauvre pere & cette bonne mere ayant aimé, cheri, instruit & élevé leurs enfants dans la vertu & dans la crainte de Dieu sont enfin morts. That poor father, and that good mother, having loved, cherished, instructed, and brought up their children in virtue, and in the fear of God, are at last dead.

RULE II. The passive participles coming after the tenses of *avoir*, are commonly declinable, when they are preceded by their absolute regimen expressed by a noun or pronoun, whether conjunctive or another.

Examples.

Quels courages Venus n'a-t-elle pas domtés. What courages has Venus not overcome.

Example of both Rules.

J'ai reçu les lettres que vous m'avez écrites au su- I have received the letters which you wrote to me

jet

jet de l'affaire que je vous
avois proposée; & après les
avoir lues avec attention,
j'ai reconnu comme vous,
que si je l'avois entreprise,
j'y aurois trouvé des ob-
stacles que je n'avois pas
prévus.

on the subject of the af-
fair which I had proposed
to you; and after having
read them with attention,
I have known like you, that
if I had undertaken it, I
would have found obstacles
in it which I did not fore-
see.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. When the nominative is put after the verb, the
participles, though preceded by their absolute regimen,
become indeclinable; as in *vous devez être satisfait
de la justice que vous ont rendu vos juges, &c.*

2. When the participle is followed by a noun in the
accusative, which refers to a preceding regimen, and
which makes part of it. So in speaking of *Adam* and
Eve we must say, *Dieu les avoit créés innocents, mais
les promesses trompeuses du démon les ont rendu coupa-
bles, &c.*

3. When the participle extends its regimen to ano-
ther verb by which it is followed, and with which it is
so closely connected, that they both make an indivisible
sense, as in *n'avez-vous pas envie de pratiquer les ver-
tus que vous avez entendu louer? Combien d'hommes
retombent dans les désordres qu'ils avoient résolu d'évi-
ter? &c.*

☞ The participles are also indeclinable, when the
verbs with which they make an indivisible sense are un-
derstood, as in this expression, *je vous ai rendu tous
les services que j'ai voulu, que j'ai dû, que j'ai pu:*
that is to say, *que j'ai voulu, que j'ai dû, que j'ai pu
vous rendre.*

4. When the participle and the auxiliary *avoir* are
used impersonally, the participle is always indeclinable,

as

as in les cholères excessives qu'il a fait ont causé beaucoup de maladies, &c.

RULE III. The participles passive preceded by the tenses of *être*, are always declinable, when *être* is used like a substantive verb, and it is used as such in the neuter, passive, passive reflected verbs, and in those reflected by expressions.

Examples.

Les Juifs sont tombés plusieurs fois dans le péché d'idolatrie.

The Jews fell several times into the sin of idolatry.

Nos premiers parents ne s'étoient pas aperçus de leur nudité avant leur crime.

Our first parents did not perceive their nakedness before their crime.

Les lettres & l'écriture ont été inventées pour peindre la parole, & pour parler aux yeux.

Letters and writing were invented to paint speech, and to speak to the eyes.

If there is a conjunctive pronoun before the participles *allé* and *venu*, followed by another verb, these participles are indeclinable; as *elle nous est venu voir*; *elle lui est allé porter de l'argent*, &c. because then the participle, and the following verb, are only thought to make one word, and the conjunctive pronoun is only governed by the second verb; whereas by transposing the conjunctive pronoun, you should say, *elle est venue nous voir*; *elle est allée lui porter de l'argent*.

RULE IV. When the tenses of *être*, which precede the passive participles, are simply put for those of *avoir*; then these participles are declinable or indeclinable, in the same circumstances as the participles preceded by the tenses of *avoir*. The tenses of *être* are simply put for those of *avoir*, in direct and indirect reflected verbs.

Examples.

Caton s'est tué pour ne pas tomber entre les mains de César.

Cato slew himself that he might not fall into the hands of Caesar.

Lucrece

*Lucrece s' étoit donné
la mort, ne pouvant sur-
vivre à l' affront qu'elle
avoit reçu de Tarquin.*

*Lucretia killed herself,
not being able to survive
the affront which she had
received from Tarquin.*

* * Which is, as if I had said *Gaton a tué soi: Lu-
crece avoit donné la mort à soi, &c.*

R E M A R K S.

1. **W**HEN the participles passive are declinable, they agree either with a noun substantive, or with the nominative of the verb, or with the absolute regimen of the verb. When they do not form any compound tense, and when they are only used as adjectives they agree with a noun substantive; as, *un ouvrage achevé, une maison achevée, &c.*

2. They agree with the nominative of the verb, when they form, with the auxiliary *être*, the compound tenses of a verb, which has no absolute regimen, as in *mon frere est tombé, ma sœur est tombée, son pere a été puni, sa cousine a été punie, ses neveux se sont repentis, ses nieces se sont querellées, &c.*

3. They agree with the absolute regimen of the verb, when they form with *avoir* or *être*, the compound tenses of a verb preceded by its absolute regimen; which chiefly happens when this regimen is expressed by a conjunctive, relative, or absolute pronoun, as when I say, *cette maison est à moi, je l' ai achetée. Je vous rends vos livres, je les ai lus. Les lettres que j' ai écrites. Quels ennemis ne me suis-je pas faits? &c.*

OF GERUNDS.

THE gerund ends in *ant*, is naturally indeclinable, to whatever gender or number it refers, and marks that the signification of the verb is only transitory, and subject to that of another verb, as when *Phædrus* says,

*Quelle importune main,
en formant tous ces nœuds,
A pris soin sur mon front
d'assembler m's cheveux ?*

What troublesome hand,
in forming all these plaits,
Hath taken pains upon
my forehead to gather my
hairs.

*Qui empêche de dire la
vérité en riant ?*

Who hinders you to tell
the truth in laughing ?

*Groyez-vous qu'en agis-
sant avec tant d'impru-
dence, vous méritiez la
confiance de vos amis.*

Do you think that by
acting so imprudently, you
deserved the confidence of
your friends.

* * The principal action in the first example is *a pris soin d'assembler*; and *en formant*, only expresses an action as transitory and subject to the principal one. In the second *dire la vérité* is the principal verb to which *en riant* is subject, &c.

§15 The preposition *en* is not always added.

END of the FIRST PART.

PART

S
I.
II.
case,

1.
2.
3.
4.
1.
2.

C
RULE

Mon
le livre

PART II.

OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is the true and right arrangement of the different parts of speech.

Its parts are two, *viz.*

CONCORD and GOVERNMENT.

I. Concord is when one word agrees with another.

II. Government is when a word governs a certain case, mood, or tense.

CONCORD is fourfold.

1. Of articles, with their substantives.
2. Of adjectives, with their substantives.
3. Of relatives, with their antecedents.
4. Of nominatives, with their verbs.

GOVERNMENT is also fourfold.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Of substantives. | 3. Of pronouns. |
| 2. Of adjectives. | 4. Of verbs. |

CHAP. I.

OF CONCORD.

ARTICLE I.

CONCORD OF ARTICLES.

RULE. THE articles must agree with their substantives in gender, number and case.

Examples.

Mon petit frere cherche le livre.

My little brother look for the book.

Q

Ma

226 *Remarks on the Definite Articles.*

Ma petite sœur apportez la chaise.

Un honnête homme méprise le monde.

Les uns persuadent au vice & les autres à la vertu.

La terre est ronde.

Le monde est grand.

Les fideles sont aimés de Dieu.

My little sister bring the chair.

An honest man contemns the world.

Some persuade to vice, and others to virtue.

The earth is round.

The world is large.

The faithful are beloved by God.

*† In the two first examples they agree in gender; in the two next in number, and in the three last in case.

REMARKS on the ARTICLES.

I. On the DEFINITE.

1. **T**HE definite articles are put before common nouns taken in a definite and determinate sense, with respect to their extent of signification; and the occasions wherein common nouns are taken in a definite sense are, 1st. When they signify the kind in its full extent of signification, that is to say, with all the subjects it contains; 2^{dly}. or one, 3^{dly}. or several subjects of the same kind, determined by the circumstances of the person who speaks, or of the discourse.— And by the help of the definite articles *le, la, les*, with their cases, we mark these three kinds of determinations of extent of signification.

2. The definite articles are put before common nouns: but to determine more particularly the extent of their signification, we commonly add some adjective, or a relative pronoun, followed by a verb. For adjectives, as well as relative pronouns are explicative of

or determinate, when they express some attribute that agrees to the whole species of the nouns to which they are joined, and when they leave this noun in its full extent of meaning; as, *les hommes mortels*, or, *les hommes qui sont mortels*.

They are determinate, when they express some attribute, that is common only to a part of the subjects contained in that kind of noun to which they are joined, and then they confine their extent; as, *les hommes savants*, or, *les hommes qui sont savants*.

We may know that a common noun signifies the kind in its whole extent, when it is used alone, or when the adjective, or relative pronoun, by which it is accompanied, is purely explicative; as when we say, *l'homme paraîtra au jugement de Dieu*, I speak of the whole species: and when I say, *les Eveques qui ne tiennent leur autorité que de Jesus Christ, sont juges de la foi*, I speak in general of all the bishops.

3. Some noun adjective, a determinate relative pronoun, or even some other word, is commonly used in discourse to restrain the signification of a common noun, and to make it only signify, one or more subjects of the same kind, which being added to a common noun, restrains its signification, as *les Rois sages*; *les Rois qui sont élus*; *les Rois d'Angleterre*, it is not meant in these examples to speak of all kings.

When I say, *le roi qui fut décapité par ordre de son parlement*; *le Mogul d'aujourd'hui*, &c. I only mean a particular king, and a particular Mogul.

4. A common noun is sometimes restrained only to signify one, or several subjects, by the circumstances of the person who speaks. Thus, *le Roi*, in the mouth of a French-man means Lewis the XVth, or in the mouth of an English-man means George the IIIrd; *Le palais du prince*; means such a palace, of such a prince.

5. The definite articles are not only put before common nouns, which have a determinate signification, but also before certain proper names, which, of themselves,

signify only particular things; such as of some parts of the world, of some planets, parts of the earth, kingdoms, provinces, mountains, rivers, &c. And we say *le ciel, la terre, la mer, le soleil, la lune, l'Europe, l'Asie, la France, l'Angleterre, la Normandie, le Languedoc, le Caucase, La Seine, &c.* but though these names, of themselves, signify things sufficiently determinate, not to need the definite article, it may however be added; because they have been regarded as common nouns, restrained to a single subject. So according to this conjecture, by saying *le ciel, le soleil, l'Europe, &c.* We mean, perhaps, that part of the world *Ciel*, the planet called *Soleil*, that part of the earth called *Europe, &c.*

6. The definite articles are put before proper names when they are susceptible of different attributes, and of different determinations: Which chiefly regards the name of God, or when they contain several subjects; as, *vous devez tout attendre du Dieu des miséricordes*, I consider him by one of his attributes, or rather I consider him as multiplied by the number of his perfections, only viewing him on the side of mercy: and that way of viewing him, is determined by the definite article.

When we say, *le Brutus qui conspira contre César* the definite article that is put before *Brutus* determines this name to mark another *Brutus*, than he who expelled the kings of *Rome*. We say by the same reason, *le Socrate d'Athènes, le Ciceron de nos jours, le mercredi saint, &c.*

7. The absolute nouns of number take the definite article, when the nouns to which they are joined, are already determined to a fixed number, either by themselves, as when I say, *les trois personnes de la sainte trinité, les douze apôtres, les quatre saisons, les sept jours de la semaine, &c.* or by the circumstances of the discourse, as when I say, *les deux livres que vous avez lus; les dix Louis que je vous ai prêtés, &c.*

8. Nouns

8. Nouns of the ordinal number take also the definite article; as, *il est le premier; elle est la quatrième; voilà le douzième livre que j'ai lu ce mois, &c.* but when you put a proper name before it, you must suppress the article, as, *Henri quatrième, Guillaume troisième, &c.* And, in general, the numeral adjectives have no article after their substantive; as, *volume cinquième, livre dixième, chapitre sixième, &c.*

9. The possessive relative pronouns take the definite article before them, *vide pages 103, & 104.* The article in these pronouns serves to mark the noun, which is not repeated.

10. Prepositions taken substantively require the definite article before them; as, *le dedans de la ville; le dehors de la maison; le devant de cet homme.*

11. Though I said under note 5, that the definite article ought to be put before names of kingdoms, provinces, rivers and mountains, you must however except such names of kingdoms, &c. as have been long known to us, after the preposition *en*; as, *il est en France, il va en Angleterre, il demeure en Provence, &c.* But the names of rivers that are feminine, take the indefinite article *de* in the genitive after *riviere*; as, *la riviere de Loire; la riviere de seine, la riviere de Garonne, &c.* And if they are of the masculine gender they retain the definite article after *riviere*; as, *la riviere du Rhone, la riviere du Danube, la riviere du Tibre, &c.* But you must say, *de vin de Rhin, de vin de Moselle, &c.* and not *du vin du Rhin, du vin du Moselle.*

12. When the word *mont* comes before the name of a mountain, the definite article is put before *mont* and the mountain's name; but the *English* article (*the*) is left out, except in the plural, and when the name of some other mountain is added in the same sentence; as, *le mont Parnasse est une des montagnes favorites des poètes; les monts Pyrénées séparent la France de l'Espagne, &c.*

236 *Remarks on the Definite Articles.*

13. The *French* put the definite article before almost all *Italian* proper names after their example, and before some surnames taken from the place where such persons were born; as, *le Tasse & l' Arioste étoient de bons poètes; le Guarini est l'auteur du pastor-fido; le Titien étoit un excellent peintre; la Sunamite; la Samaritaine, &c.* We also say *le Lazare*, in speaking of *Lazarus*, who came from *Bethany*, to distinguish him from the poor *Lazarus*.

14. *Bien*, signifying much, many, or a great deal, the same as *beaucoup*, takes the definite article after it; as, *il a bien de l'argent, par conséquent bien du crédit; donnez lui bien du pain, bien du vin, & bien de la bière.*

15. *Force*, signifying much, many or a great deal, the same as *beaucoup*, takes no article before the following noun; as, *il y avoit force peuple à la promenade aujourd'hui; j'ai vu force gens à la cour, &c.*

16. In speaking of a disease, a hurt, or of any internal quality, or defect of any part of the body, the definite article is used before the following noun instead of the possessive pronoun; as, *la tête me fait mal; j'ai mal aux yeux; je suis blessé au bras; j'ai froid aux mains, mais j'ai chaud aux pieds; you must not say, ma tête fait mal à moi, j'ai mal à mes yeux; je suis blessé en mon bras, &c.* as the *Germans*, and as even many among ourselves sometimes do. But when you speak of cloaths, or other exterior ornaments, you must use the possessive pronoun; as, *il porte à sa tête, ou à la tête une couronne de laurier, ils portent des plumes à leurs chapeaux, &c.*

17. There are certain verbs, which take after them, nouns without articles, in some particular phrases; as, *avoir affaire, avoir chaud, avoir froid, avoir faim, avoir soif, avoir égard, avoir envie, avoir patience, avoir raison, avoir soin, battre froid, boire chopine, boire frais. Donner congé, donner jour, donner martel en tête, faire fête, faire pitié, faire semblant, faire tête, faire vente,*

gagner

gagner pays, lever boutique, porter envie, porter malheur, rendre gorge, trousser bagage, &c.

18. The definite article is used before the infinitives of particular verbs, and then they become substantives; as, *le boire, le diner, le dormir, le manger, le savoir, le souper, le vouloir, &c.*

II. On the INDEFINITE.

1. **T**HE indefinite article is used before appellative nouns taken in an unrestrained and general signification, or when we are to speak of the efficient cause of some effect, or when we use some adverb of quality along with it; as, *une statue de marbre; un pot de vin; il est mort de melancholie; j'ai un peu, beaucoup, plus, moins, trop, assez de richesses, de pauvreté, de santé, &c.* But if you add any thing that can specify, or restrain that general signification to any particular subject, you must then use the definite article; as, *c'est une statue du marbre que j'ai acheté à Genes; il est mort de la melancholie que la mort de son ami lui a causée; un peu du vin qui est dans ce pot, &c.*

2. *Meilleur* and *plus* take the indefinite article in both genders and numbers, in the comparative degree; as, *Alexandre le grand avoit de meilleurs soldats que Darius; les Romains avoient de plus vaillants hommes que les Albans, &c.* But in the superlative they take the definite article in both genders and numbers; as, *les Anglois sont les meilleurs soldats du monde; le general Paoli est un des plus braves hommes de notre siècle, &c.*

3. Adjectives, which mark plenty or want, require the indefinite article; as, *cette femme est pauvre d'esprit, le Danemarc est plein de braves gens, &c.*

4. If a noun substantive be put before names of kingdoms, or countries, &c. you must also use the indefinite article;

232 *Remarks on the Partitive Articles.*

article; as, *le roi d'Espagne est mort, le Prince Henri de Prusse est un brave officier, &c.*

5. Adjectives of praise, or dispraise take also the indefinite article; as, *le prince Ferdinand est digne de louange, elle est indigne de mon amitié, &c.*

6. The preposition *chez*, signifying *from*, requires the indefinite article before it; as, *je viens de chez le roi, où j'ai soupé, aussitôt que je serai revenu de chez monsieur le chevalier j'irai vous voir, &c.*

7. If an adjective is to be put before a substantive you must use *de* before the adjective; as, *Alexandre le grand étoit un prince de grand courage & il fit de belles actions, &c.*

8. The indefinite article must be put before a pronoun whether singular, or plural, when it comes before a substantive; as, *je ne sais la quelle de vos sœurs j'aime la plus, elles sont toutes deux si aimable; monsieur, vous êtes le seul conquérant de mon cœur, & je ne désire que l'honneur de votre amitié, &c.*

III. *On the PARTITIVE, or INDETERMINATE.*

1. **T**HE partitive, or indeterminate articles, are put before names of persons, or things, of which we would only express an indeterminate part, without specifying, either the precise number, or quantity. Their effect is to restrain the signification of such nouns as are put after them; and for this reason the pronoun *quelque* may generally be used in their stead; as, *des hommes savants pensent comme moi, j'ai acheté des bons livres, un beau discours déplaît souvent à des ignorants, &c.*

In each of the above examples, *des* may very well be changed into *quelque*; and, though this peculiarity regards the plural, yet you may construe in the same manner such as are used for the singular: for, as these
articles

articles are put before the names of persons or things, in the plural, whose number is restrained, so also in the singular, they are to be put before names of things, of which we want to restrain the number; as, *du vin me feroit plaisir; j'ai acheté de la viande; j'ai employé mon argent à de la marchandise, &c.*—You may observe in these examples, that by *du vin, de la viande, à de la marchandise*, is only meant a certain quantity of each; and not wine, meat and merchandise in general.

2. The difference between nouns preceded by the definite article, signifying only a part of the subjects of the kind; and the nouns, preceded by the partitive article, with respect to the extent of their signification is, that the definite article extends to all determinate subjects: whereas the partitive article extends only to an indeterminate part of the subjects you speak of; as, *les hommes ont été rachetés par Jésus Christ; des hommes sont prédestinés; les hommes savants sont précis; des hommes savants se trouvent en chaque pays, &c.* In the first example is meant the whole species of mankind. In the second, we only mark an indeterminate part. And, although the third restrains the species of men, yet it extends to all the learned men. In the fourth, we not only restrain the general species of mankind, but we do not even give *hommes savants* all the extent of meaning, these words might have; because we only speak of an indeterminate part of the learned men.

3. As the nominatives and accusatives of the partitive articles, are like the genitives and ablatives of the indefinite, they may be distinguished in the following manner.

When *du, de la, de l', des*, are put before nouns, which being either nominatives to, or absolutely governed by a verb, or are put after a preposition, governing an accusative case, they are partitive: but, if they precede a noun, either coming after another, or when they are relatively governed by a verb, they are the

234 *Remarks on the Partitive Articles.*

the genitives, or ablatives of the definite or indefinite articles. In, *du pain & de l'eau me suffisent; de la musique me divertiroit; des auteurs rapportent cette histoire differemment, &c.* Pain, eau, musique, auteurs, are the nominatives of the verbs; consequently, *du, de l', de la, des,* are partitive articles. In, *je demande du tems; nous cherchons de la monnoie; vous achetez des chevaux, &c.* Du, de la, des, are partitive articles, because *tems, monnoie* and *chevaux*, are absolutely governed by the verbs. In, *on se nourrit avec du pain; il faut mettre ces fruits dans de la paille; j'ai disputé contre des philosophes, &c.* du, de la, des, are also partitive articles, because *pain, paille,* and *philosophes*, are governed by the prepositions *avec, dans* and *contre*. But in, *la science du Blazon, j'ai reçu un present de la reine, je suis aimé des honnêtes gens, &c.* du, de la, des, are definite articles, because they precede nouns, which are neither nominatives, nor absolutely governed by verbs, nor after prepositions, governing an accusative case.

4. There is no difference between the partitive articles made of the genitive of definite articles, and those formed of the genitive of indefinite articles; except that the first are always put before nouns, or that they are followed by their adjectives, or that they have none; whereas, when the substantive comes after its adjective, we sometimes only use the partitive article *de* in the singular, but if the noun be in the plural, the partitive article *de* is the one most commonly used. Examples for the nominative, *de bon pain, & de bonne eau suffisent pour la nourriture du corps humain, de grands événements, & de grandes révolutions suivirent la mort de César, &c.* Examples for the dative, *les gens de guerre sont souvent réduits à de mauvais pain, & à de mauvaise viande; les personnes destinées à de grands emplois, doivent se préparer à de fâcheuses disgraces, &c.* Examples for the accusative, *pour bien écrire, il faut employer de bon papier, & de bonne encre; un dis-*
cours

cours n'est beau, qu' autant qu'il contient de solides raisonnemens, & de nobles expressions, &c.—There are, nevertheless, some occasions, wherein, although the noun-substantive be in the plural, and preceded by its adjective, it is necessary to use the partitive article *des*, and not *de*. This happens, when the substantive and adjective, between them, only present a single idea, and when they are regarded as making only one word, in such a manner, that the adjective serves less to express some particular quality of the substantive, than to render the signification complete. Thus, although we say, *cet homme a de belles terres; cet écrivain forme de belles lettres; ce capitaine ne veut que de braves soldats, &c.* We must, on the contrary say, *cet homme a des belles lettres, il voit des beaux esprits, — des grands seigneurs, &c.* Because *belles lettres, beaux esprits, grands seigneurs*, only mean here sciences, wits, people of great quality, whereas if we said, *cet homme a de belles lettres, il voit de beaux esprits, de grands seigneurs*, we would mean, *des lettres qui sont belles, des esprits qui sont beaux, des seigneurs qui sont grands*, which would afford very different ideas.

IV. On UN, UNE.

UN, *une* are indefinite, and are ranked among the articles only when they are not used as nouns of number, and when they simply mark that the nouns to which they are joined have an indeterminate signification, both with respect to their meaning and circumstances. They are put before the name of a single person or thing, taken in a vague or indeterminate meaning, containing all the unities of the same kind; as, *un roi doit être le père de son peuple; un homme est bien étonné quand il est pris au mot contre son intention;*
je

je parle d'un officier que vous connoissez; il s'attache à une personne qui le trompera, &c.

¶ In the foregoing examples *un, d'un, à un* only express a vague unity, and do not exclude a plurality, as we would not speak of any particular king, man, officer, or particular person: but what we say, may be applied to all kings, men, &c. And altho' the unity expressed by *un* excludes a plurality, our principal aim is not however to discover that exclusion, and we only use *un*, because we do not determine by any circumstance, whereby they may be known from other persons.

Des, de and *à des* the plural of *un, une* are used in the same sense with these of the singular; as, *il y a des hommes plus raisonnables que des autres; com bien avez-vous de livres? ces pommes ressemblent à des poires; &c.*

The articles *un, une* must not be repeated before a noun adjective; as, *c'est un honnête & savant homme, c'est une belle & vertueuse femme; ce sont de grands & vigoureux hommes, &c.* You must not say, *c'est un honnête & un savant homme, c'est une belle & une vertueuse femme, &c.*

POSITION of ADJECTIVES.

OF adjectives, some go before the substantive, others after, and others before or after it indifferently.

The adjectives, which go before the substantive, are

I. Those of number; as, *un, deux, trois, dix, douze, &c.*

II. The ordinal adjectives; as, *le premier, le second, &c.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1. In speaking of ecclesiastical, or secular princes, the ordinal number is put after its substantive; as,

Alexandre

Alexandre septieme; Ferdinand troisieme; &c. but then a genitive is understood; as, *Alexandre septieme de ce nom entre les papes, &c.*

2. When you cite the divisions of a book, the ordinal number is also put after its substantive; as, *tome premier, livre deuxieme, chapitre quatrieme, section septieme, article troisieme, paragraphe, ou nombre cinquieme.*

III. The proportional numbers: as, *simple vêtement; double profit; triple couronne, &c.*

IV. *Memo*, expressing the Latin word *idem*, goes before; but when it answers to *ipse*, it ought to be put after.

V. *Ample, beau, bel, bon, cher, chetif, divers, douce, galant, grand, gros, jeune, large, long, mauvais, meilleur, méchant, orde, pire, proche, riche, sage, sale, semblable vaillant, vieux*, are put before their substantives.

R E M A R K S.

1. In the preceding rule, is only understood, of what is commonly practised, in the use of the words comprehended in the rule; for, in some particular phrases, the same words have sometimes a different position, which cannot be changed. For example, we said that *gros* goes before the substantive, nevertheless, we say *une femme grosse*, and then it signifies big with child; whereas *une grosse femme*, signifies large, fat, or lusty. Likewise in the following expressions, the order cannot be changed, *le liberal arbitre; de plein jour; une basse-fausse; la basse-contre; les pays-bas; un habit long; un court baton; vin vieux; vin nouveau, fruits nouveaux, fils unique faux témoin; vin doux; à plattes coutures; amour propre*, and some others.

2. Adjectives of quality, or of quantity may go after their substantives, when you add some adverb; as, *un homme parfaitement bon; une peinture fort belle, &c.*

3. There

3. There are adjectives which go before their substantives in one signification, and after them in another, as was said before of *grosse*, *femme*, and *femme grosse*, in like manner in this, *gentil garçon*, a genteel youth; *un homme gentil*, a Pagan; or Gentile; *un homme vain*, a haughty man; *une vaine entreprise*, a fruitless enterprise; *un vain effort*, a vain effort; *un certain jour il vint me trouver*, &c. on a certain day he came to me, that is, a day which he does not precisely mark: but you ought to say, *assignez moi un jour certain pour vuider cette affaire*, assign me a certain day to terminate this affair; that is to say, a sure and fixed day.

The ADJECTIVES

Which are put after their Substantives are,

I. **THOSE** which express colour; as, *blanc*, *noire*, *rouge*, &c.

II. Such as express the quality of the air; as, *chaud*, *froid*, *sec*, *tiede*, *humide*, &c.

III. National qualities, that is, adjectives formed from names of nations; as, *Alemand*, *Italien*, *Anglois*, *François*, &c.

IV. Participles of verbs, especially the preter or past; as, *battu*, *Cassé*, &c.

V. Adjectives of figure, quantity, condition and quality; as, *tortu*, *courbe*, *solide*, *quarré*, *ronde*, *bossu*, *Angulaire*, *étroit*, *délié*: There are, however, exceptions to this rule; as, *long-tems*; *long-chemin*; *large campagne*; *homme sain*; *malade*, *vertueux*, *vicieux*, *contumace*, *rebelle*, *importun*, *rude*, *pensif*, *appréhensif*, and near a hundred more, which end in *f*, *if*, and *ique*.

VI. The adjectives which end in *esque*, *ile*, and *ule*; as, *une figure grotesque*; *un discours puerile*; *une femme crédule*, &c.

The

The following may either be put before, or after their substantives, viz.

Abominable, admirable, ancien, bien-aimé, comun, cruel, divin, éffroyable, épouvantable, excellent, extreme, fidele, heureux, honnête, horrible, illustre, insigne, malin, sensible, severe, sincere, soudain, terrible, &c. But observe, that several of these indifferent adjectives are better placed after the substantive *homme*, or *femme*, than before it; as, *homme sincere, severe, malin, &c. femme illustre, &c.* And others go better before it, *honnête homme, &c.*

Note. Several adjectives, which in their proper and natural sense, go after their substantives, may, and sometimes ought, to go before them, when they are taken in a figurative and metaphorical sense; as, *homme aveugle, aveugle passion; toile noire, noire fureur; feuille verte, verte reprimande; homme vif, vif resentment; vive source, vive flame, vive douleur; viande fade, fade entretien; homme maigre, maigre chere; eau chaude, chaude colere; chose rare, rare esprit; terre ferme, ferme résolution; eau froide, froide mine; fruits meurs, meures délibérations; fruit nouveau, vin nouveau; but you must say, un nouveau jour, une nouvelle vie.*

ARTICLE II.

CONCORD of the ADJECTIVE, with its SUBSTANTIVE.

RULE I. THE adjective must agree with its substantive in gender, number and case.

Un homme sage est attentif à sa conduite, exact à ses devoirs, & vigilant sur ses intérêts.

A wise man is attentive to his conduct, exact to his duties, and vigilant over his interests.

Une

240 Concord of the Adjective, with its Substantive.

Une belle femme qui n'a point de bien est dans un grand danger, quand elle est exposée aux sollicitations d'un homme riche, qui lui fait de grandes offres.

A beautiful woman, who hath no fortune, is in great danger, when she is exposed to the solicitations of a rich man, who makes her great offers.

Un bon roi est comme le pere de son peuple.

A good king is like the father of his people.

1. Under this rule are comprehended pronouns and participles of verbs taken adjectively; as, *mon pere & ma mere, un enfant languissant, une femme aimée, &c.*

2. *Mon, ton, son,* are put before nouns of the feminine gender beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; as, *mon ame; ton épée; son histoire, &c.*

3. When there are none of these words *que, la, les,* the participle passive suffers no change; as, *ma mere m'a écrit une lettre;* do not say *écrite une lettre:* but if the relative goes before the preterite, you must grant the participle with its antecedent in gender and number; as *la lettre que mon pere m'a écrite; les lettres que mon oncle m'a écrites, &c.* Except if the nominative comes after the preterite, for then you ought to say, *les lettres que m'a envoyé ma mere,* and not *envoyées:* except 2dly. when an infinitive immediately follows the preterite; as, *les lettres que j'ai vu écrire,* not *vues, je les ai fait peindre; elles se sont fait peindre, not faites.*

4. What has been said with regard to *que, la, les,* ought also to be used with respect to the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se, nous, vous,* when they are in the accusative, and followed by the verb which governs them; as, *elle s'est attristée; ma mere, je vous ai toujours respectée; nous nous sommes abusés,* and if a woman speaks, she says *je me suis couroucée.*

5. With regard to the following ways of speaking it is better to say *le commerce de cette ville l'a rendu puissante,* than *rendue;* *le commerce nous a rendus puissants,* rather than *rendus.* However, with the reciprocal

cipro
to l
pron
s'est
partic
ther;
vée;
gener
gueri

RU
feren
by th
them
the n

Mo
felle
Ma
cousin
difs
autre
Son
fortis

Th
two su
ficatio

Il
force
mirab
On
court
& una

reciprocal adverbs, where the substantive verb is always to be found, the participle agrees with the personal pronoun; as, *nous nous sommes rendus puissants; elle s'est rendue puissante*: except when after the feminine participle, of the preterite feminine, there is also another; for example, *elle s'est trouvé guérie*, and not *trouvée*; for, in the masculine, it is better to follow the general rule of reciprocal verbs; as, *ils se sont trouvés guéris; ils se sont vus engagés dans la misère*.

RULE II. When two substantives singular, of different genders, come together in a sentence, coupled by the conjunction (&) the adjective which agrees with them, must be put in the masculine gender, as being the most noble, and plural number.

Examples.

Monfieur & Mademoi- selle font-ils à la maison?	Are Master and Miss in in the house?
Mon cousin Jaques & ma cousine Helene sont mala- difs & mortels comme les autres.	My cousin James, and my cousin Helen, are sickly and mortal like others.
Son oncle & sa tante sont fortis & revenus ensemble.	His uncle and his aunt have gone out, and return- ed together.

Exception.

The adjective must be put in the singular, when the two substantives have the same, or nearly the same signification.

Examples.

Il répondit avec une force & une fermeté ad- mirable.	He replied with an ad- mirable force and firmness.
On ne trouve dans les courtisans qu' une politesse & une cordialité affectée.	We do not find in cour- tiers but an affected polite- ness and cordiality.

242 *Concord of the Adjective, with its Substantive.*

RULE III. An adjective after two, or more substantives, agrees in number with the one that is nearest to it, if these substantives are not to be the nominatives of the verb *être*, or of a verb passive.

Examples.

Il chérit la vertu & les dignités éminentes.

He loves virtue and eminent dignities.

On voit souvent le mérite & la vertu opprimée.

We often see merit and virtue oppressed.

Scylla s'étoit acquis dans Rome un pouvoir & une autorité absolue.

Scylla had acquired to himself in Rome an absolute power and authority.

RULE IV. The adjective must be put in the plural with a substantive singular, when that substantive is a collective noun, followed by another substantive plural in the genitive.

Examples.

La plupart des hommes sont aveugles sur eux-mêmes.

The greatest part of men are blind concerning themselves.

Il n'y a qu'un petit nombre de Chrétiens fideles à leurs devoirs.

There is but a small number of Christians faithful to their duty.

J'ai réfuté la plupart des objections qui m'ont été faites.

I have refuted the most part of the objections which were made to me.

R E M A R K S.

1. This rule holds with regard to all collective nouns. You must not say *est aveugle*, nor *est fidele*, &c.

2. It frequently happens that adjectives cannot agree with any substantive expressed in the phrase: then they are masculine, and have only a vague and general substantive, which may be rendered by one of these two words, *chose*, or *homme*; as, *il est utile d'étudier*; *les savants admirent votre ouvrage*; that is to say, *c'est une*

une chose utile d'étudier ; les hommes savants admirent votre ouvrage.

3. It is not always necessary that a noun substantive, be accompanied by an adjective ; but an adjective always supposes a substantive to which it refers.

A R T I C L E III.

CONCORD of the RELATIVE, with its ANTECEDENT.

Of Q U I.

RULE I. **Q**UI the relative is of both genders and numbers, and relates equally in the nominative, to persons or things, and must agree with its antecedent in gender and number.

Examples.

La doctrine qui met le souverain bien dans la volupté du corps, est indigne d'un philosophe.

Le jeune homme qui cultive la vertu & les sciences, goûte un bonheur plus solide, que celui qui passe sa vie dans la dissipation & dans les plaisirs.

Les fables qui font parler les animaux pour notre instruction, sont plus utiles que celles qui attribuent aux dieux du Paganisme, les vices & les actions les plus abominables.

The doctrine which places sovereign happiness in bodily pleasure, is unworthy of a philosopher.

The young man who cultivates virtue and the sciences, tastes a happiness more solid, than he who passes his life in dissipation and in pleasure.

The fables which make animals to speak for our instruction, are more useful, than those which attribute to the gods of Paganism, the vices and the actions the most abominable.

244 *Concord of the Relative, with its Antecedent.*

RULE II. *Qui*, in all the cases, except the nominative, can only have for antecedent a noun, or pronoun, expressing a person.

Examples.

Combien y a-t-il de grands hommes de qui les belles actions sont restées dans l'oubli ?

How many great men are there, whose fine actions have lain in oblivion?

Il faut bien choisir les amis à qui on veut donner sa confiance.

One must chuse well the friends to whom he intends to give his confidence.

Il y a un Roi dans les cieux de qui dépendent les rois de la terre.

There is a King in the heavens, on whom the kings of the earth depend.

Exception.

When you are to personify things, or that you are to transform them into divinities, such as, fortune, fame, faith, glory, virtue, victory, &c. which can only happen in a figurative stile; and when you speak of animals, or other things, you must use the oblique cases of *qui*, though they properly belong to persons.

Examples.

La fortune de qui j'attens tout.

Fortune, from whom I expect all.

La gloire à qui les héros sacrifient.

Glory to whom the heroes sacrifice.

C'est la foi à qui l'écriture attribue la justification.

It is faith to whom the scripture attributes justification.

C'est la vertu de qui nous devons attendre le plus grand bien.

It is virtue from whom we ought to expect the greatest good.

C'est un cheval à qui je dois la vie.

He is a horse to whom I owe life.

RULE III. *Qui* must not be used in the accusative but with a preposition before it.

Examples.

Par qui avez-vous été mis en liberté ?

By whom was you set at liberty? Avec

Avec qui avez-vous passé l'après midi?

With whom did you pass the afternoon?

Songez à fléchir le juge devant qui nous devons paraître un jour.

Let us think on softening the judge before whom we must one day appear.

Exception.

Que, in both genders and numbers, governed by a verb, is used instead of *qui* in the accusative, and must be put before the verb.

Examples.

Le prince que je sers est généreux.

The prince whom I serve is generous.

La femme que j'ai épousée est modeste & vertueuse.

The woman whom I have married is modest and virtuous.

Les ennemis que vous craignez seront vaincus.

The enemies whom you fear will be conquered.

RULE IV. *Qui* must agree with its antecedent, not only in gender and number, but also in person.

Examples.

C'est moi qui parle, & vous le saurez.

It is I who speak, and you shall know it.

Vous qui perdez ainsi votre temps devez être puni.

You who thus lose your time ought to be punished.

Les écoliers qui étudient la médecine sont nombreux.

The scholars who study medicine are numerous.

Of QUOI.

RULE I. **QUOI** must not be used either in the genitive or ablative, but after the antecedent *ce*, with which it agrees.

Examples.

C'est de quoi je vous rendrai compte demain matin.

It is of which I will give you an account to-morrow morning.

246 *Concord of the Relative, with its Antecedent.*

C'étoit de quoi je me plaignois au roi.

Vous avez parlé mal de moi, mais c'est de quoi je me console.

It was of which I complained to the king.

You have spoken ill of me, but it is of which I console myself.

RULE II. *Quoi* is more used in the dative than in the other cases, and has for antecedent any noun, except such as express a person, or an animate being.

Examples.

Le bonheur éternel est l'unique objet à quoi nous devons aspirer.

On ne réfléchit pas assez sur tous les dangers à quoi on s'expose dans le monde.

Les habitudes vicieuses sont des maladies à quoi tous les secours humains ne peuvent remédier.

Eternal happiness is the only object to which we ought to aspire.

One does not reflect enough on all the dangers to which he exposes himself in the world.

Vicious habits are distempers to which all human assistance cannot give a remedy.

RULE III. *Quoi* in the accusative, must have a preposition before it; by which it is governed.

Examples.

Le principe sur quoi je me fonde est vrai.

Les plaisirs après quoi on court avec tant de chaleur sont faux & trompeurs.

Les armes avec quoi vous vous êtes défendu sont fortes & bien dangereuses à manier.

The principle upon which I found is true.

The pleasures after which they run with so much warmth are false and deceitful.

The arms with which you defended yourself are strong, and very dangerous to handle.

Exception.

Que is used as the accusative of *quoi*, governed by a verb; and when it relates, like it, to things absolutely inanimate, or that it hath *ce* or *rien* for antecedent.

Examples.

Examples.

*Les dangers qu'il avoit
courus entre Scyllé & Cha-
rybde.*

*Ce que j'avois resolu fut
executé d'abord.*

*Il n'y a rien que je ne
ferois pour vous plaire.*

The dangers which he
had run betwixt *Scylla* and
Charybdis.

That which I had re-
solved was executed imme-
diately.

There is nothing that I
would not do to please you.

R E M A R K S.

1. *A quoi* may be elegantly turned by *au quel*, *à la
quelle*, and is not indispensably useful, but when it hath
ce or *rien* for antecedent; as, *c'est à quoi je vous exhorte*;
il n'y a rien à quoi je ne sois disposé, &c.

2. *Quoi*, in the nominative, is never used as a rela-
tive, and though it is very commonly used in the ac-
cusative, it has always some preposition before it, by
which it is governed. It may elegantly be turned by
le quel, *la quelle*.

OF LE QUEL, LA QUELLE.

RULE I. **L**E QUEL, *la quelle*, are used in the
nominative. 1st. At the beginning of
any considerable narration, and must agree with their
antecedents; and, 2^{dly}. in ordinances, contracts, &c.
and then the antecedent is sometimes repeated.

Examples.

*Il y avoit dans la ville
d'Athènes un grand philo-
sophe, le quel avoit cou-
tume d'enseigner les vertus
morales à la jeunesse.*

There was in the city of
Athens a great philosopher,
who was wont to teach the
moral virtues to the youth.

248 *Concord of the Relative, with its Antecedent.*

C'est une ordonnance du roi, la quelle fera de grands changements par tout le royaume.

Le quel principe me fait conclurre.

It is an ordinance of the king, which will make great changes throughout all the kingdom.

Which principle makes me to conclude.

Note. *Le quel* and *la quelle*, cannot be used in the nominative with an antecedent, but in the above, or like expressions,

RULE II. When there would be any danger of an equivocal meaning in using *de qui*, or *dont*, &c. perspicuity of stile requires that you make use of *du quel*, *de la quelle*, even though speaking of persons.

Examples.

La Seine dans le lit de la quelle viennent se jetter d'autres rivières.

C'est un homme la vertu du quel m'est connue.

- J'ai envoyé un courier exprès à Londres au retour du quel je vous dirai ce que j'aurai appris de cette affaire.

The *Seine* in the bed of which other rivers come to throw themselves.

He is a man whose virtue is known to me.

I have sent a courier express to *London*, at whose return I will tell you what I will have heard of that affair.

RULE III. If you speak of beasts, or inanimate things in the dative, you must use *au quel* and *à la quelle*.

Examples.

Le cheval au quel j'ai donné du foin.

Le jardin au quel je donne tous mes soins.

Les sciences aux quelles je m'applique.

The horse to which I have given hay.

The garden to which I give all my cares.

The sciences to which I apply myself.

Des

Des deux discours que vous m'avez fait voir, je ne sais au quel je dois donner la préférence.

Of the two discourses which you have shown me, I know not to which I ought to give the preference.

RULE IV. This pronoun, in the accusative, must have a preposition before it.

Examples.

C'est un ami sur le quel vous pouvez compter.

He is a friend on whom you may count.

C'est le sujet pour le quel il s'est querrellé.

It is the subject for which he quarrelled.

On dit que Cromwel avoit cinquante chambres, & ses meilleurs amis ne savient jamais dans la quelle il couchoit.

It is said that Cromwel had fifty chambers, and his best friends never knew in which he lay.

RULE V. *Que* is put for the accusative of *le quel*, *la quelle*, governed by a verb, when custom will not admit of their own.

Examples.

L'homme que Dieu créa à son image & ressemblance.

Man whom God created in his own image and likeness.

Les créatures que Dieu tira du néant.

The creatures whom God took out of nothing.

Les anges que l'orgueil précipita dans les enfers.

The angels whom pride cast headlong into hell.

R E M A R K S.

1. *Le quel*, *la quelle*, in the above examples would be vicious.

2. You must use *le quel*, *la quelle*, and their oblique cases, when you are to make a choice, or in asking a question; but then the antecedent is commonly understood; as, *dites-moi le quel*; *donnez-moi le quel il vous plaira*;

250 *Concord of the Relative, with its Antecedent.*
plaira; le quel est ce de vous trois qui veut venir avec moi?

3. On some occasions it is more elegant to use *le quel*, and *la quelle* than *qui*, &c. as, *ils imitent ces peuples qui habitent la zone torride, les quels tirent des flèches contre le soleil.*

4. Although the natural use of *que* as a relative, be to express an accusative, there are, nevertheless, some ways of speaking authorised by custom, wherein it supplies the place, sometimes of a dative, and sometimes of a genitive, or ablative. Examples, instead of *à qui*; *c'est à vous que je parle.* Instead of *à la quelle*; *c'est à la gloire que j'aspire.* Instead of *dont*, or *de la quelle*; *c'est de cette somme que je vous demande le payement.* Instead of *de qui*, or *dont*; *c'est du roi que vous devez attendre cette grace.*

5. When *que* asks a question, it has the same signification as *quelle chose*; as, *que dites-vous? que cherchez-vous? &c.*

OF DONT.

RULE. **DONT** supplies the place of the genitives *de qui*, *du quel*, &c. in both genders and numbers, and it is always more sure to prefer it.

Examples.

Les hommes dont je vous parle étoient armés de pié en cap.

Je vous envoie les livres dont vous m'avez écrit, & dont vous avez besoin.

Songez à appaiser la colère de Dieu, dont nous devons craindre les effets.

The men of whom I speak to you were armed from head to foot.

I send you the books of which you wrote to me, and of which you have need.

Let us think on appeasing the wrath of God, of which we ought to dread the effects.

REMARKS

R E M A R K S.

1. You may either use *dont* or *de qui* in the following examples, and some others of the like nature; *Alexandre dont*, or *de qui le courage est assez connu*.

2. *Du quel* and *de la quelle* are not used in the following, and like expressions; *le livre dont vous m'avez fait présent*; *la religion dont on méprise les maximes*; *Dieu dont les Israélites reçurent tant de bienfaits*.

3. *Dont* is better than *de quoi* in the following; *il n'y a rien dans le monde dont Dieu ne soit auteur*.

OF OU, D'OU, PAR OU.

* **T**HESE words never speak but of things, both in the singular and plural, and have often more grace in a discourse, than the pronouns which they represent.

I. OF O U.

RULE. As often as *où* can be rendered by *au quel*, *à la quelle*, *à quoi* or by *dans le quel*, *dans la quelle*, *dans quoi*, *en la quelle*, *en quoi*, it is relative.

Examples.

Voyez le danger où vous a conduit votre imprudence.

See the danger to which your imprudence hath led you.

Quel seroit notre bonheur, si Eve eût évité le piège où elle s'est laissé prendre!

What would be our happiness if Eve had avoided the snare wherein she let herself be caught.

La haine & la flatterie sont les écueils où la vérité fait naufrage.

Hatred and flattery are the rocks whereon truth makes wreck.

☞ In the first example *où* is put for *au quel*. In the second for *dans le quel*. In the third for *en les quels*.

II. OF

II. Of D'OU.

RULE. **D'OU** is relative, when it may be rendered by *du quel, de la quelle, de quoi* or *dont*.

Examples.

*J'ai été dans les jardins
et c'est d'où je viens.*

I have been in the gardens, and it is from whence I come.

Cariolan vint assiéger Rome, d'où il avoit été banni.

Cariolanus came to besiege Rome, from which he had been banished.

Bien des gens n'admettent pas les principes d'où dépend le système de Descartes.

Many people do not admit the principles on which the system of Descartes depends.

Telles sont les preuves d'où je conclus.

Such are the proofs from which I conclude.

* * In the first example *d'où* is put for *du quel*. In the second for *de la quelle*. In the third for *des quels* or *dont*. In the fourth for *des quelles*.

III. Of PAR OU.

RULE. **PAR OU**, as often as you can say equally *par le quel, par la quelle* is relative.

Examples.

Les Mages ne reprirent pas le même chemin par où ils étoient venus à Bethléem.

The Magi did not return the same way by which they had come to Bethléhem.

Il n'y a rien de plus bas que les moyens par où les flatteurs s'insinuent dans l'esprit des grands.

There is nothing more low than the means by which flatterers insinuate themselves into the mind of the great.

On ne pénètre pas toujours les intrigues par où certaines personnes parviennent à se venger de leurs ennemis.

One does not always penetrate the intrigues by which certain persons come at avenging themselves of their enemies.

*† In the first example *par où* is put for *par le quel*. In the second for *par les quels*. In the third for *par les quelles*.

R E M A R K S.

THE relative *que* is often used in an elegant manner.

1. Instead of *où* ; as, *c'est en France qu'on boit du bon vin ; ce fut le jour qu'on joua le cid, &c.*

2. Instead of *qui*, *dont*, and *d'où* ; as, *c'est de vous qu'on parle ; c'est de vous que j'attens ce secours ; c'est à vous que je parle ; c'est de cette maison qu'il est sorti.* That is to say, *c'est de vous de qui je parle ; c'est de vous dont j'attens ce secours ; c'est à vous à qui je parle ; c'est de cette maison d'où il est sorti.*

3. Instead of *avec le quel*, *avec la quelle* ; as, *j'ai reçu votre lettre avec tout le contentement que je devois recevoir cet honneur ; on attaqua la place avec toute la vigueur qu'il fut possible, &c.* That is to say, *avec le quel je devois recevoir, &c. avec la quelle il fut possible.*

4. Instead of *par le quel* ; as, *une fontaine ne peut jeter de l'eau douce par le même tuyau qu'elle jette de l'eau salée ; je sais cela par le même canal que vous l'avez appris, &c.* That is to say, *par le quel elle jette de l'eau salée ; par le quel vous l'avez appris.*

5. *Que*

254 Concord of the Relative, with its Antecedent.

5. *Que* is also elegantly used before a verb for *rien à* ; as, *vous n'avez que faire ici ; je n'ai que faire ; je n'ai que faire de vous ; je n'ai que faire de vos présents, &c.* That is to say, *vous n'avez rien à faire ici ; je n'ai rien à faire ; je n'ai rien à faire de vous ; je n'ai rien à faire de vos présents, &c.* But it is better, however, to say, *il n'avoit rien à répondre ; and vous n'avez rien à repartir à ce juste reproche ;* than, *il n'avoit que répondre ; and vous n'avez que repartir à ce juste reproche.*

Of the Relative Particles *Y* and *EN*.

Of *Y*.

I. *Y* Refers to things, or places in the dative, but seldom to persons, and is put instead of *à*, *à la*, *au*, *aux*, *à cela*, *en ce lieu là*, or of any thing before spoken of.

Examples.

J'entens ce que vous proposez, & j'y penserai à loisir.

I hear what you propose, and I will think on it at leisure.

Il est aux champs, il y alla hier sur le tard.

He is in the fields, he went to them yesterday late.

La mort est inévitable, & nous devons y penser à tout moment.

Death is unavoidable, and we ought to think on it every moment.

II. *Y* is often used in the third person singular of the tenses of the verb *avoir* or *être*, taken impersonally.

Examples.

Il y a en cette ville plusieurs riches marchands.

There are in this town several rich merchants.

Il y a long tems que je ne vous ai vu.

There is a long time since I saw you.

Il y avoit plus à espérer qu'à craindre.

There was more to hope than to fear.

Of

Of EN.

EN denotes persons, things, places, and often the part of a whole, which hath already been spoken of; and signifies, *of him, of her, of them, of it, at it, some, from, thence.*

Examples.

<i>Vous avez deux chevaux, pretez m'en l'un.</i>	You have two horses, lend me one of them.
<i>Quand le courier sera venu, j'en prendrai ce que je desire.</i>	When the courier will have come, I will take from him what I desire.
<i>Combien de valets avez-vous? j'en ai un.</i>	How many servants have you? I have one.

R E M A R K S.

- 1. YOU** must never put *en* before *y*.
- En* is sometimes not expressed in *English*; as, *j'en tiens*, I am caught; *il m'en veut*, he hath a plot upon me; *je ne sais où j'en suis*, I know not whereabout I am; *le cœur vous-en-dit-il?* have you a mind to it.
- When *en* is to be put after imperative verbs, you ought to put a hyphen between the verb and it, to mark that it is not the preposition *en*, and that it does not govern the noun that follows it; as, *dites-en votre avis*; here it is relative, but in *dites, en bonne foi, &c.* it is a preposition.
- En* sometimes signifies *like*, the same as *comme*; as, *agir en prince, en maître, &c.* to act like a prince, like a master, &c.
- When joined to verbs of motion, it expresses the *English* word *away*, or *again*; as, *je m'en vais*, I am going

256 *Concord of the Nominative, with its Verb.*

going away; *il s'en est retourné*, he is returned again, &c.

N. B. Though I have ranked *où, d'où, par où, y*, and *en* under the article of relatives; yet they are nothing but conjunctive particles.

A R T I C L E IV.

CONCORD of the NOMINATIVE, with its VERB.

RULE I. **T**HE nominative must agree with its verb, in number and person*.

Examples.

J'aime ma maitresse parce qu' elle est aimable.

Je vous prie de rendre témoignage à la vérité, & de craindre Dieu plus que les hommes.

Nous serions heureux, si Adam n'eut pas péché.

Ils apprennent les mathématiques & la dance.

I love my mistress because she is lovely.

I beseech you to give testimony to the truth, and to fear God more than men.

We would be happy, if Adam had not sinned.

They learn the mathematics and dancing.

R E M A R K S.

* 1. The principal use of the nominative, in discourse, is to be the subject of a proposition; for there is no verb, which hath not a nominative expressed or understood: and the personal pronouns are always nominatives to the first and second persons, as well plural as singular; as, *je dine, nous dinons: vous parlez, &c.*

2. In speaking, or in writing, you must never name yourself first. You must not say, *moi & lui, nous & ces messieurs, &c.* But *lui & moi, ces messieurs & nous, &c.*

3. *Vous*

3. *Vous* agrees with nouns in the singular, when you speak only to one person, although the verb to which it is nominative be in the plural; as, *vous êtes sincère & cordial; vous deviendrez savant*, and not *sinceres, cordiaux, savants*.

The first person is accounted better than the second, and the second than the third; wherefore when two, or more persons come before a verb, the verb always agrees with the best person; as, *lui & moi avons diné ensemble; vous & elle serez les bien venus, &c.*

Exception.

In asking a question the nominative must be put after the verb, and sometimes it takes a nominative both before and after it *.

Examples.

Avez-vous obtenu permission à vous promener?	Have you got leave to walk?
Avez-vous déjeuné avec notre mère?	Did you break fast with our mother?
Monsieur dine-t-il chez nous aujourd'hui?	Does the gentleman dine with us to-day?
Ne sommes-nous pas bons amis, & ne nous couchons nous ensemble?	Are we not good friends, and shall we not lie together?

R E M A R K S.

* 1. When the verb hath a substantive before it, for its nominative, the pronoun must be put after the verb; as, *le roi est-il venu? la reine se porte-t-elle bien? nos amis sont-ils arrivés.*

2. In expressing a wish, the nominative is also set after the verb; as, *ainsi soit-il? puisse-t-il être aussi heureux que je le souhaite? puissiez-vous vivre autant que Méthusalem.*

3. The nominative is put after its verb in the following little parenthesis; *dis-je; dis-tu; dit-il; dit-on; direz-vous; ajouta-t-il; s'écria-t-il, &c.*

S

4. In

258 *Concord of the Nominative, with its Verb.*

4. In the imperfect of the subjunctive in the following particular ways of speaking, and some others; *dussé-je me perdre; fût-il aussi riche que le roi Crefus; eût-il autant d'esprit qu' un ange; &c.*

5. As the marks of the accusative are the same with these of the nominative, they may be thus distinguished. The nominative generally precedes the verb, except in the occasions above mentioned, and the accusative comes after it; as in *la mere aime & chérit ses enfants*, *mere* is the nominative and *enfants* the accusative: but if you say, *les enfants aiment & chérissent la mere*, *enfants* becomes nominative, and *mere* the accusative.

R U L E II.

PERSONS or things, whatever they be, may be nominatives to a verb in the third person *.

Examples.

Quintius Cincinnatus rep^{re} prit la charuë dès qu'il eut quitté la dictature.

Quintius Cincinnatus returned to the plough as soon as he had quitted the dictatorship.

La terre ne produiroit rien, si elle n'étoit échauffée par les rayons du soleil, & humectée par les eaux de la pluie, qui la disposent à pousser au dehors les plantes dont elle a reçu la semence.

The earth would produce nothing, if it was not warmed by the rays of the sun, and moistened by the rain waters, which dispose it to push out the plants, the seed of which it hath received.

Un jeune homme studieux doit se lever dès le point du jour.

A studious young man ought to rise at the point of day.

R E M A R K S

R E M A R K S.

* 1. **T**HE general pronoun *on*, or *l'on* is often put for nominative, in the third person singular; as, *on fait*, &c. and sometimes in familiar discourse it is used for the first person singular, or plural; as, *on verra*, *on fera*, &c. that is to say, *je verrai*, or *nous verrons*; *je le ferai*, or *nous le ferons*, &c. *L'on* is never put after the verb; you must not say, *fait l'on*? *mange l'on*? &c. But *fait-on*? *mange-t-on*? &c.

2. When one is an intimate friend to, and nearly of the same quality with the person to whom he speaks, or if he speaks in wrath, and with contempt he may make use of *tu*, *toi*, *ton*, *ta*, *tes*; as, *que tu me fais grand plaisir*, *mon cher ami*, *de me venir voir souvent*. *Comment te portes-tu chevalier*? *montons dans ton carrosse*. *Tu es un coquin*. *Tu es un miserable*, *tu m'a volé*, & *je te ferai pendre*.

R U L E III.

TWO nominatives singular, must have the verb in the third person plural.*.

Examples.

La vertu & le vice ont
des suites bien différentes.

Virtue and vice have very
different consequences.

Mon frere & ma sœur
reviennent *malades de la*
campagne.

My brother and my sister
return sick from the coun-
try.

Pierre & Antoine se
louent *à tout moment.*

Peter and Anthony praise
themselves every moment.

R E M A R K S.

* 1. **WHEN** two or more nominatives singular are separated by the disjunctive adverb, the verb is generally put in the singular; as, *ou la rage, ou le desespoir le lui fera faire.*

2. Two or more nouns singular joined by *ni* agree with the verb either in the singular, or plural; as, *ni votre amour, ni votre haine ne me touche, or touchent point.*

3. When there are several nominatives, the last of which being in the singular, and separated from the rest by (*mais*) the verb ought to be in the singular; as, *non seulement ses honneurs, & ses richesses, mais aussi sa reputation s'évanouit, and not s'évanouirent.*

4. After the copulative conjunction (*&*) you may omit repeating the same nominative pronoun, and it is often better to do it; as, *je l'ai rencontré, & ne lui ai rien dit, without repeating je:* however if an adverbative conjunction, or the particle *que* interveens, you must repeat the personal pronoun; as, *je l'ai rencontré, mais je ne lui ai rien dit; si je le rencontre, je ne lui dirai rien; ou nous en viendrons à bout, ou nous prendrons patience; lors que vous viendrez & que vous m'en prierez, &c.*

R U L E IV.

TWO nominatives, the one of the second, and the other of the first person, take the verb in the first person plural.

Examples.

*Vous & moi irons souper
chez le prince, & ensuite
nous reviendrons ici.*

*You and I shall go to
sup at the prince's, and af-
ter we will return hither.*

Vous

*Vous & moi sommes
hors de danger.*

You and I are out of
danger.

*Vous & moi ne sommes
pas bons amis.*

You and I are not good
friends.

RULE V. Two or more nominatives, one of the first, and the other of the third person, take also the verb in the first person plural.

Examples.

*Lui & moi avons fait le
voyage ensemble.*

He and I have made the
journey together.

*Votre pere & moi irons
demain à Douvre.*

Your father and I shall
go to-morrow to *Dover*.

*Mon oncle, mon cousin,
& moi primes le dessein
d'étudier la musique.*

My uncle, my cousin,
and I took the design to
study music.

RULE VI. Two nominatives, the one of the second, and the other of the third person, take the verb in the second person plural.

Examples.

*Vous & votre femme
gagnez le cœur de tout le
monde.*

You and your wife win
the heart of every body.

*On dit que vous & votre
fille allez souvent à la
cour ?*

It is said that you and
your daughter go often to
court.

*Je sais que vous & votre
beau-frere devez aller en
Italie.*

I know that you and your
brother-in-law ought to go
into *Italy*.

RULE VII. The verbs which mark the connection, or affinity of words, take one nominative before and another after them*.

*Il y demeura cinq cens
hommes sur la place.*

There remained five hun-
dred men upon the spot.

*Cet homme devient un
grand orateur.*

This man is becoming a
great orator.

*Je m'appelle Don Ber-
nard de Castile Blazo.*

I am called *Don Bernard*
of *Castile Blazo*.

262 *Concord of the Nominative, with its Verb.*

* The substantive verb *être* serves to connect two nominatives; as, *l'homme est un animal raisonnable; la lune est un corps opaque & emprunte sa lumière du soleil.*

R U L E VIII.

THE demonstrative pronoun (*ce*) both in the singular and plural, precedes the verb *être*, and requires it in the singular, when it is to be followed by a personal pronoun *.

Examples.

<i>C'est toi, mon frere que je cherche.</i>	It is thee, my brother, whom I seek.
<i>C'est moi, monsieur, à votre service.</i>	It is I, sir, at your service.
<i>C'est lui, c'est elle, c'est nous, c'est vous.</i>	It is he, it is she, it is us, it is you.

R E M A R K S.

* 1. *Ce*, taken for *cela* ought always to have, first a relative, with it; as, *je sais ce qui vous fache; je suis informé de ce qui vous met en peine; &c.* Or 2dly the third persons of the verb *être*; as, *c'est bien fait; c'est fait de moi; ce sera bien fait; &c.* But before other verbs make use of *ceci* and *cela*; as *ceci me servira; cela me déplaît; &c.* do not say *ce me servira; ce me déplaît.*

2. *C'est* hath sometimes a substantive after it, either alone, or with its adjective; and also an article, or possessive pronoun with the substantive, if that substantive is not a proper name; as, *c'est un peintre; c'est un savant homme; c'est le roi; &c.* *C'est* is also put before past participles; as, *c'est arrivé comme je l'avois souhaité; c'est fait; &c.* before adverbs; as, *c'est assez; c'est trop;* before prepositions; as, *c'est pour vous faire plaisir;* before infinitives of verbs; as, *c'est jouer à tout perdre; c'est rompre l'amitié; &c.*

3. Sometimes

3. Sometimes *il est* may be put instead of *c'est* with a pronoun or article, when you would express a determinate quality of the subject of which you speak, particularly if there be another *il* before any other verb than *être*; as, *je sais bien qu'il est mon parent, mais il me traite comme étranger*, instead of saying, *que c'est mon parent*.

EXCEPTION.

When *être* is to be followed by *eux, elles*, or another noun in the plural, it must be put in the plural *.

Examples.

<i>Ce sont eux, ce sont elles.</i>	It is they, or these are they.
<i>Ce sont les bons rois qui font les bons sujets.</i>	It is the good kings who make good subjects.
<i>Ce sont les méchants qui sentiront des peines éternelles dans la vie à venir.</i>	It is the wicked who will feel eternal pains in the life to come.

REMARKS.

* In the imperfect tense you must rather put the singular than the plural; as, *c'étoit eux; c'étoit elles*; but it is better to prefer the plural, when it follows a noun; as, *c'étoient d'honnêtes gens; c'étoient les meilleurs, &c.* It is better to say *si c'eut été eux; si c'eut été elles; si c'eut été vos amis qui eussent fait cela*; than *si c'eussent été eux, elles, vos amis qui, &c.*

RULE IX.

THE personal pronoun *il* becomes nominative to the verb *être*, when an adjective comes alone without a substantive after it *.

Examples.

<i>Il est vertueux.</i>	<i>Il est</i>	He is virtuous.	<i>Il</i>
<i>savant.</i>		knowing.	

264 Concord of the Nominative, with its Verb.

Il est malicieux. Il est | He is malicious. He is
malade. | sick.

* When *il est* is used impersonally it takes only an adjective after it; as, *il est bon d'étudier; il est expedient d'y prendre garde; il est nécessaire de bien vivre, pour bien mourir, &c.* But if the adjective is to be accompanied by its substantive, you may then indifferently put *c'est*, or *il est*; as, *c'est un honnête homme, or il est honnête homme.*

2. The personal pronouns *il, elle*, with their other cases, are commonly used to mark the quality of the person or thing: but *ce* rather designs the person or thing itself.

3. An article is never put after the personal pronoun; and on the contrary, one is generally put after *ce*, before such nouns as may have it.

RULE X. When you speak of times and circumstances, *il* is also nominative to the verb *est*, and takes a substantive after it ‡.

Examples.

Il est tems d'y aller.	It is time to go there.
Il fera bientôt heure de diner.	It will soon be dinner-time.
Il est une heure après midi.	It is one o'clock after-noon.
Il est jour. Il est nuit.	It is day. It is night.
Il est tard. Il est tems de se lever	It is late. It is time to rise.

‡ If you ask *quelle heure est-ce qui sonne?* What hour is it that strikes? the answer must be by the same pronoun; as, *c'est une heure; c'est midi; ce sont deux heures, &c.*

RULE XI. When you are to speak of dignities, or professions, you may either use *ce, cet, cettè*, or *il, elle*, as nominatives to *est*; but if you use *ce, cet, cettè*, you must put *un, or une* before the noun.

Examples.

Examples.

C'est un prince, ou

Il est prince.

C'est une reine, ou

Elle est reine.

C'est un marchand, ou

Il est marchand.

He is a prince, or

He is prince.

She is a queen, or

She is queen.

He is a merchant, or

He is merchant.

RULE XII. Two nominatives are to be put before the verb, when you would give more force to the expression.

*Examples.*Et moi, je vous dis tout
le contraire.

Et toi, tu dis qu'il ment.

Lui, il dispute continu-
ellement.And I, I tell you quite
the contrary.And thou, thou sayest
that he lies.He, he disputes conti-
nually.

RULE XIII. Two nominatives are also used, one before, and the other after the verb, to answer to the question *quand?* When?

*Examples.*Il viendra la semaine pro-
chaine.

Il vint l'année passée.

Il doit venir lundi pro-
chain.

He will come next week.

He came last year.

He ought to come Mon-
day next.**NOTES on the VOCATIVE.**

1. The vocative hath a great affinity with the nominative, seeing it marks the cause of the action, or passion; and, as it serves as subject to the verb (at least in the imperative mood) it ought to agree in number and person with the verb.

2. When you speak to a person or thing, it is by the vocative.

3. The vocative agrees with the second persons singular and plural of the imperative; as, *viens Pierre;*

va

va ma sœur ; venez mes frères ; allez mes enfants, &c.

4. When you speak to things by the figure called apostrophe, you must do it by the vocative ; for you can apostrophy *heaven, earth*, and all creatures ; but then the noun must have no article, but only (*ô*) ; as, *ô ciel que tu es grand ! ô terre que tu es misérable ! &c.* And without the particle *ô* we say, *ciel tu es le séjour des bien-heureux ; terre tu es l'habitation des mauvais ; créatures rendez louanges au créateur, &c.*

5. When the adjective is alone, or before the substantive, then you must retain the particle ; as, *ô l'impie que tu es ! ô l'honnête homme que vous êtes, &c.*

CHAP. II.

of GOVERNMENT.

ARTICLE I.

GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE I. **O**NE substantive governs another, signifying a different thing in the genitive.

Examples.

La vertu ôte la crainte de la mort.

Virtue takes away the fear of death.

Les loix de nature ne peuvent se changer.

The laws of nature cannot change.

Les divinités de Jupiter, de Saturne, de Minerve, & de Junon ne sont que des chimères.

The divinities of Jupiter, of Saturn, of Minerva, and of Juno, are nothing but chimeras.

RULE II. Names of men, cities, castles, villages, woods, rivers, months, &c. must be put in the genitive after *nom, ville, chatteau, village, citadelle, bourg, bois, forêt, fleuve, mois, &c.* †

Examples.

Examples.

Le nom de Dieu doit être honoré de toute créature.

The name of God ought to be honoured by every creature.

La ville de Londres est bien située pour le commerce.

The city London is well situated for commerce.

Le chatteau d'Edinbourg est très fort.

The castle of *Edinburgh* is very strong.

La forêt d'Orleans est fort large

The forest of *Orleans* is very large.

† 1. Names of saints sometimes take no articles before them, though they be in the genitive; as, *la porte Saint Jaques*; *le pont Saint Jean*; *la rue Saint Honnoré*; *la fête Saint Nicolas*, &c.

2. Names of months, coming after ordinal numbers, have also no article before them in the genitive; as, *le sixieme Mai*; *le vingtieme Avril*; *le dixieme Octobre*, &c.

RULE III. The substantives which mark appurtenance, attribution, or acquisition govern the dative †.

Examples.

Voilà l'épée à mon frere, & les gands à ma mere.

There is my brother's sword, and my mother's gloves.

C'est ici la maison à monsieur le premier ministre.

This is the first minister's house.

N'est ce pas là le livre à monsieur le gouverneur.

Is not that the governor's book.

Ceci est le chappi au valet.

This is the servant's hat.

† This dative may also be expressed by the genitive of possession; as, *c'est la suite du roi, & la carosse de la reine*, &c. instead of *c'est la suite au roi, & la carosse à la reine*, &c.

RULE IV. One substantive governs another in the dative, when that roun is to mark the use a thing is put to §.

Examples.

Examples.

La bouteille au vin, au vinaigre, à l'huile, &c.

The wine, the vinegar, the oil bottle, &c.

Le marché au beurre, au bléd, au bois, aux fouliers.

The butter, the corn, the wood, the shoe-market.

Les marchés aux bœufs, aux chevaux, aux cochons, aux œufs.

The beef, the horse, the pig, the egg-markets.

§ This dative may also be expressed by the particle (*où*) ; as, *c'est la bouteille où l'on met du vin, du vinaigre, de l'huile ; c'est le marché où l'on vend le beurre, le bléd, le bois, les fouliers ; ce sont les marchés où l'on vend les bœufs, les chevaux, les cochons, les œufs.*

ARTICLE II.

GOVERNMENT of ADJECTIVES.

RULE I. **T**HE superlative relative governs the genitive.

Examples.

C'est l'homme le plus honnête du monde, & le plus gallant de la ville.

He is the most discreet man of the world, and the most gallant of the city.

Cette demoiselle est assurément la plus vertueuse, & la plus spirituelle des femmes.

That young lady is surely the most virtuous, and the most pious of women.

Alexandre étoit le plus brave des hommes.

Alexander was the bravest of men.

RULE II. There are a certain number of adjectives, to wit, *aprochant, certain, content, assuré, joyeux, bien-aise, ravi, triste, fâché, digne, indigne, las, exempt, jaloux, idolatre, inconsolable, imbu, incapable, liberal, prodigue, dépendent, indépendant, mécontent, envieux,*

envieux, plein, rempli, libre, vuide, capable, susceptible, &c. which govern the genitive.

Examples.

Je suis certain & assuré de la nouvelle.

I am certain and sure of the news.

Nous sommes bien-aïse & ravi de votre bonheur.

We are well pleased and glad at your happiness.

Cet avocat est jaloux de son honneur.

That advocate is jealous of his honour.

Je ne suis ni mécontent de ce général, ni envieux de son succès.

I am neither displeased with that general, nor envious of his success.

Je suis digne de compassion, & vous êtes indigne de pitié.

I am worthy of compassion, and you are unworthy of pity.

Il est prodigue de louanges, & liberal d'argent.

He is lavish of praise, and liberal of money.

RULE III. The following, and some others, govern the dative; viz. *agréable, attentif, commode, complaisant, conforme, convenable, aisé, mal-aisé, contraire, préjudiciable, utile, nuisible, favorable, avantageux, honorable, profitable, bon, honteux, important, bien-séant, indifférent, permis, défendu, nécessaire, préférable, essentiel, suffisant, enclin, sensible, fidele, propre, considerable, sujet, soumis, paresseux, nonchalant, lent, négligent, vaillant, formidable, égal, semblable, supérieur, inférieur, &c.*

Examples.

La doctrine qui est conforme à la vérité, est la plus convenable au bien des hommes.

The doctrine which is conform to truth, is the most suitable to the good of men.

Ce qui est contraire à la patrie, doit être désagréable aux honnêtes gens; & ce qui est préjudiciable à tout le monde n'est utile à personne.

That which is against one's country, ought to be disagreeable to honest men; and that which is prejudicial to every body, is not useful to any one.

RULE

RULE IV. National adjectives and others, that express a thing, as in, or done after the manner, or mode of a country, or of any person is put in the dative.

Examples.

Nous mangeons tantôt à la Françoisse, tantôt à la Hollandoise, & souvent à l'Angloise.

Ces gens là sont habillés à la Turque.

Voilà des soldats qui se battent à la Prussienne.

Vous raisonnez à la Platonicienne.

We eat sometimes in the *French* fashion, sometimes in the *Dutch*, and often in the *English*.

These people are cloathed in the *Turkish* fashion.

Behold soldiers who fight in the *Prussian* way.

You reason in the *Platonic* way.

* These examples may be expressed otherwise, for example you may say, *nous mangeons tantôt à la manière, or à la façon des François, des Hollandois, des Anglois.* And so of the others.

ARTICLE III.

GOVERNMENT of PRONOUNS.

THERE are only a few pronouns which govern the genitive.

Examples.

L'un d'eux sera puni.

Qui de vous viendra avec moi ?

Quelques uns des Anglois furent pris.

Chacun de nous a perdu trente guinées.

Personne du monde fait cela mieux que moi.

One of them will be punished.

Who of you will come with me?

Some of the *English* were taken.

Each of us hath lost thirty guineas.

No body in the world knows that better than I.

Celui

Celui d'entre vous qui
osera l'entreprendre sera
récompensé.

Le quel des trois choi-
sirez-vous ?

Nul de ceux là, & en-
core aucun des autres.

Plusieurs des princes de
l'Europe se sont ligués in-
utilement contre Louis qua-
torze.

Pas un de vous.

He among you who will
dare to undertake it will
be rewarded.

Which of the three do
you chuse.

None of those, and also
none of the others.

Many of the princes of
Europe combined uselessly
against Lewis the XIVth.

None of you.

ARTICLE IV.

GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

RULE I. **O**NE verb governs another in the infini-
tive sometimes with, and sometimes
without *de* and *à*. *Examples.*

*Je vais écrire à mon frere
que vous êtes ici.*

*Vous m'obligez à partir,
mais je reviendrai bientôt.*

*Je vous exhorte à étu-
dier, si vous voulez devenir
savant.*

*Regulus dissuada les Ro-
mans de faire la paix,
quoiqu'il lui en dût coûter
la vie.*

*I am going to write to
my brother that you are
here.*

*You oblige me to depart,
but I will return soon.*

*I exhort you to study if
you would become learn-
ed.*

*Regulus dissuaded the Ro-
mans from making peace,
although it was to cost him
his life.*

RULE II. An active verb governs the accusative *.

Examples.

*Punir les méchants &
recompenser les bons est le
devoir d'un juge integre.*

*To punish the wicked,
and to reward the good, is
the duty of an upright
judge.*

Un

Un pateur connoit ses
brebis.

Je prefere la science aux
richesses.

A pastor knows his
sheep.

I prefer knowlege to
riches.

* 1. Several active verbs take after them the accusative of a person, and the genitive, or ablative of a thing; as, *accuser quelqu'un de larcin; détourner quelqu'un d'un mauvais dessein.*

2. Active verbs, besides the accusative, govern also the dative of the person, or of the thing to which the action and design of the verb tends; as, *j'envoie les livres à mon frere, & je donne mon habit vieux à mon valet; ils ont dit mille injures à cet homme, &c.* This dative is also frequently expressed by the accusative with the preposition *pour*; as, *j'ai acheté des livres pour mon oncle Thomas, &c.*

RULE III. A passive verb generally governs the ablative†.

Examples.

Je suis connu du roi &
de la reine.

La vertu est admirée de
tout le monde.

Mon ami a été maltraité
de ses ennemis, & encore
pire de ses parents.

I am known by the king
and queen.

Virtue is admired by
every body.

My friend hath been
maltreated by his enemies,
and yet worse by his rela-
tions.

† 1. A passive verb sometimes governs an accusative with the preposition *par*; as, *j'ai été maltraité par mes freres; les François ont été battus & défaits par les Anglois.*

2. When the passive verb expresses an action purely intentional, that is to say, an operation of the mind; it ought to have an ablative after it: but when the action expressed by the verb passive, is material, or participates of the feelings of the soul, and motion of the body, then it governs the accusative with *par*; as, *votre discours a été loué par les plus habiles gens, &c.*

3. There

3. There are passive verbs, which besides governing the accusative govern also the dative, to which the passion of the verb refers; as, *des ambassadeurs ont été envoyés au roi, &c. cela a été proposé à monsieur le prince; cet argent a été donné à mon père, & la lettre lui a été rendue aujourd'hui, &c.*

RULE IV. Reflective and reciprocal verbs govern the accusative of a conjunctive pronoun, which must always be set between the nominative and its verb.

Examples.

<i>Je me repens de ma faute.</i>	I repent of my fault.
<i>L'homme se trompe en se croyant sage.</i>	Man deceives himself in thinking himself wise.
<i>Les métaux se tirent des entrailles de la terre.</i>	The metals are drawn from the bowels of the earth.
<i>Susanne s'est trouvée innocente du crime dont on l'accusoit.</i>	Susan was found innocent of the crime of which they accused her.
<i>Cette histoire se raconte différemment.</i>	That history is related differently.

RULE V. Impersonal verbs commonly govern the dative, when they govern any case; but some of them govern none.

Examples.

<i>Il importe aux hommes à bien vivre.</i>	It imports men to live well.
<i>Il convient aux jeunes gens à parler peu.</i>	It suits young people to speak little.
<i>Il plaît quelquefois à Dieu de nous éprouver par des adversités temporelles.</i>	It sometimes pleases God to try us by temporal adversities.
<i>Il importe à la république que les méchants soient connus.</i>	It imports the republic that the wicked be known.

T

RULE

RULE VI. Verbs of motion from one place to another, which answer to the question (*d'où*, from whence) govern the ablative.

Examples.

*Il revient de la Grece,
où il a appris la langue du
pays.*

*Il s'enfuit de la cour,
aussitôt qu'il sût que le roi
avoit donné ordre de l'ar-
reter.*

*Je partis de Paris hier
matin; mais j'y ai laissé
mon neveu.*

He returns from *Greece*,
where he has learned the
language of the country.

He fled from court as
soon as he knew that the
king had given order to ar-
rest him.

I quitted *Paris* yester-
day morning; but I left
my nephew there.

RULE VII. Verbs which mark distance from one place to another, and which answer to the question (*d'où*, from whence) and (*jus qu'où*, how far) the first must be put in the ablative, and the second in the dative.

Examples.

*Il y a loin de la ville au
palais royal.*

*Combien y a-t-il de Lon-
dres à Rome, & de Rome
à Delli?*

*Il vint de Japon à Edin-
bourg en dixhuit mois.*

There is far from the
city to the royal palace.

How far is there from
London to *Rome*, and from
Rome to *Delli*?

He came from *Japan*
to *Edinburgh* in eighteen
months.

RULE VIII. Verbs which mark the manner and instrument, by which any thing is done, govern the ablative †.

Examples.

*Voir plus du nez que
des yeux.*

*Jouer du violon est un
beau passe-tems.*

*Les combats ont fait pé-
rir une grande partie de
l'armée, & l'autre est peri
de nécessité.*

To see more with the
nose, than with the eyes.

To play on the violin
is a fine pastime.

Battles have made a great
part of the army to perish,
and the other is perished
by want.

† This

† This ablative is sometimes rendered by the accusative with the preposition *avec*; as, *je jetterois plus loin cette pierre avec les piés, que vous avec les mains; il faut jouer des orgues avec les piés, & avec les mains; on ne peut pas écrire bien avec la main gauche.*

RULE IX. Verbs which mark plenty, want, cause, part, matter, &c. govern the ablative.

Examples.

Il lui combla de bienfaits & de caresses à son retour.

He loaded him with benefactions and caresses at his return.

Le pauvre homme! il manque du pain.

Poor man! he wants bread.

Tous ceux qui étoient sur ce vaisseau sont périés de faim & de froid.

All those who were on board that vessel perished by hunger and cold.

Remplissez ce verre du vin blanc, & cet autre de la bierre forte.

Fill this glass with white wine, and that other with strong beer.

ARTICLE V.

GOVERNMENT of PARTICIPLES.

Of ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

THE active participles in *ant*, are of all genders, numbers and persons, so long as they have the force and signification of the verbs from which they come, and generally govern the accusative.

Examples.

La plupart des grands du royaume jugeant la seconde croisade contraire au bien de l'état, voulurent en détourner saint Louis.

The most part of the grandes of the kingdom judging the second croisade contrary to the welfare of the state, wanted to diswade St. Lewis from it.

T 2

Cette

Cette femme est sage, attachée à ses devoirs, craignant Dieu, & aimant son mari.

That woman is wise, attached to her duties, fearing God, and loving her husband.

Le roi s'asseyant sur son trône d'ivoire jugeoit son peuple avec une sagesse qu'on ne pouvoit assez admirer.

The king sitting down on his throne of ivory judged his people with a wisdom which they could not sufficiently admire.

§16 For the construction of passive participles, see the Agenda and notes on page 240.

REMARKS on the NEGATIVE PARTICLES NE, PAS, and POINT.

THE French generally use two negatives, to express the English word *no*, or *not*; viz. *ne* and *pas*, or *ne* and *point*; and although *pas* and *point* have the same signification, yet they must not be used indifferently; for,

1. *Pas* is a simple negative, and must be placed before the words which mark the degree of quality, or quantity; such as *assez*, *beaucoup*, *d'avantage*, *fort*, *un*, *deux*, *extremement*, *infiniment*, *mieux*, *moins*, *peu*, *plus*, *souvent*, *trop*, *toujours*, and before the comparatives *si* and *tant*; as, *je n'ai pas beaucoup d'argent à vous donner*; *vous n'avez pas mieux fait que lui*; *on fait souvent des dépenses qui ne sont pas fort utiles*; *les riches ne sont pas toujours plus heureux que les pauvres*; *il n'est pas si pauvre qu'il se le fait*; *Cicéron n'étoit pas moins philosophe qu'orateur*, &c.

2. *Point* denies more strongly than *pas*, and it may be said, that *pas* only marks the negation, but *point* seems also to affirm it, and is used with more grace before a noun with the particle *de* immediately after it, and at the end of a phrase; as, *on est à plaindre quand*
ou

on n'a point de talent ; saint Pierre sortit de la prison où il étoit, & ses gardes ne s'en apperçurent point ; si pour avoir du bien il en coûte à la probité, je n'en veux point ; il n'y a point de ressource dans une personne qui n'a point d'esprit.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. When *ne* is to be joined to the conditional present of the verb *savoir*, or *oser* ; to the imperfect of *pouvoir*, followed by *s'empêcher* ; or to the verb *cesser* ; *pas* or *point* are not to be used ; as, *je ne saurois & je n'oserois l'entreprendre ; il ne pouvoit s'empêcher de voler les pauvres ; elles ne cessent de le persécuter, &c.*

2. When it is to be followed by one of these words, *ni, goutte, mot, plus, rien, jamais, personne, aucun, nul, aucunement, nullement*, or by *que* signifying *but* or *only* ; as, *je ne veux, ni le voir, ni lui parler ; il ne voit goutte ; il ne disoit mot ; je n'en puis plus ; ils ne vous demandent rien ; on ne l'auroit jamais cru, &c.*

3. When it is to stand after *que*, signifying *why*, or *than* ; or a comparative ; or when it is to stand after *que*, followed by a conjunction, or before *si*, governed by a verb of doubting ; as, *que ne vous dépêchez-vous ? il a plus d'expérience que vous ne pensez ; je ne sais si je dois secourir Pamphile, ou obéir au vieillard, &c.*

4. When it is to be followed by *de* before a word expressing a part of time ; as, *c'en est fait, je ne le verrai de ma vie* ; in this and the like expressions a negative is understood, such as, *plus* or *jamais* ; for it is as if you had said, *c'en est fait, je ne le verrai jamais tant que je vivrai, &c.*

REMARKS

REMARKS on the PREPOSITIONS DANS and EN.

1. **DANS** is to be used before the nouns which express the places wherein any thing is put, or may be contained; as, *il est dans mon tiroir; il n'y a plus de pain dans la maison, &c.* And when you are to speak of a place *dans* hath a precise and definite sense, which implies that one thing contains, or includes the other, and marks the relation which the inside has to the outside; as, *on est dans la ville; on est dans la chambre, &c.* when we have not gone out of it, or that we have entered it again.

2. *Dans* is used before the names of the authors you quote; as, *j'ai lu cela dans Virgile; il a trouvé ces remarques dans Vaugelas, &c.*

3. *En* has a vague and indefinite signification, which only indicates, in general, where one is, and marks the relation of the place in which he is, to another wherein he may be; as, *on est en ville, en province, en pays-étranger; when he is gone out of his house, and that he has quitted Paris, and that he is out of his native country. You must say, on met en prison, and l'on met dans les cachots.*

4. *Dans*, when we would speak of time, marks more particularly, that wherein we execute things, and *en* marks more properly that which we spend in executing them; as, *la mort arrive dans le moment qu'on y pense le moins, & l'on passe en un instant de ce monde à l'autre.*

5. When these words are used to point out the state or qualification, *dans* is commonly used for the particularised sense, and *en* for the general one. So we say *vivre dans une entière liberté; être dans une fureur extrême; tomber dans une profonde léthargie; but we say vivre en liberté; être en fureur; tomber en léthargie, &c.*

REMARKS

REMARKS on DE, A, and POUR, before the
Infinitives of Verbs.

On DE.

DE is used before the infinitive mood on four occasions.

1. After substantive nouns; as, *l'art de peindre; j'avois grande envie de vous voir; il n'a pas le loisir de sortir; voici une occasion de vous signaler, &c.*

2. After the adjectives which govern the genitive; as, *on l'a jugé digne d'être pendu; il est fâché de vous voir en cet état; êtes-vous bien-aise d'apprendre cette nouvelle? &c.*

3. After the verb *être*, used impersonally with some adjectives; as, *il est bon, expédient, nécessaire, utile de servir la patrie; il est difficile de tromper un vieillard, &c.*

4. After the following verbs, viz. *appréhender, avertir, charger, commander, cesser, conseiller, conjurer, contraindre, défendre, dispenser, empêcher, espérer, essayer, exempter, entreprendre, désespérer, dissuader, menacer, ordonner, permettre, prier, persuader, promettre, prétendre, proposer, protester, refuser, servir, souhaiter, supplier, s'abstenir, se contenter, s'ennuyer, s'excuser, se glorifier, se flatter, se hater, se dépêcher, se laisser, se mêler, se repentir, se soucier, se rassasier, se réjouir, se priver, se vanter, sortir, venir, and ne faire que; as, il lui avertit de partir; je vous commande de sortir; il le menace de le tuer; il ne fait que d'arriver, &c.*

On A.

A is used before the infinitive also on four occasions.

1. After the following verbs, viz. *aimer, avoir, chercher, être, hésiter, prier, tarder, animer, apprendre,*

dre, encourager, exciter, engager, enseigner, exhorter, s'occuper, se plaire, se refoudre, se disposer, forcer, inviter, se hasarder, montrer, solliciter; as, il aime à badiner; on m'a invité à souper; je vous apprendrai à parler; j'ai un mot à vous dire, &c.

2. After the adjectives which govern the dative; *as, il est enclin à vous servir; vous êtes fort propre à faire cela, &c.*

3. After an adjective with the word *chose*; *as, c'est une chose honteuse à dire, mais facile à faire; on me conseille de ne le pas faire, comme c'est une chose dangereuse à exécuter, &c.*

4. After the impersonal verb *il y a*, or *être*; *as, il y a de la témérité à entreprendre une affaire de cette nature; c'est à vous à jouer; les méchants sont à craindre, &c.*

§1§ *De* and *à* are used indifferently before the infinitive after the following verbs; *viz. commencer, continuer, contraindre, forcer, s'efforcer, engager, obliger, exhorter, manquer, essayer, tâcher*, and some others.

Prier takes an infinitive after it with *à*, when it signifies to invite with ceremony, and *de*, when it is a simple invitation without ceremony.

On POUR.

Pour is used before the infinitive,

1. To express the end, design, or cause of an action; *as, je viens pour vous dire adieu; ils ont été décapités pour avoir fait de la fausse monnoie, &c.*

2. After the adverbs *trop* and *assez*; *as, vous entendez trop bien le monde pour commettre une incivilité; il est assez sage pour se conduire, &c.*

§ Prepositions must be repeated after the conjunction (*&*); *as, Dieu est infini dans son essence, & dans sa connoissance; il a passé par Bordeaux, par Angoulême, & par Vallancienne, &c.*

THE END.

MUSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

rtier,
, in-
ne à
drai

as,
faire

c'est
me
nge-

il y
ette
nt à

fini-
nti-
ger,
s.
n it
is a

on ;
ca-

en-
té ;

nc-
lans
qu-

VM
AN
M